AN

ACCOUNT

Of the COUNTRIES adjoining to

HUDSON's BAY,

IN THE

NORTH-WEST PART of *AMERICA:*

CONTAINING

A DESCRIPTION of their LAKES and RIVERS, the Nature of the SOIL and CLIMATES, and their Methods of COMMERCE, *&c.* Shewing the Benefit to be made by ſettling COLONIES, and opening a TRADE in theſe Parts; whereby the *French* will be deprived in a great Meaſure of their TRAFFICK in FURS, and the Communication between *Canada* and *Miſſiſſippi* be cut off.

WITH

An ABSTRACT of Captain *Middleton*'s Journal, and OBSERVATIONS upon his Behaviour during his Voyage, and ſince his Return.

To which are added,

I. A Letter from *Bartholomew de Fonte*, Vice-Admiral of *Peru* and *Mexico*; giving an Account of his Voyage from *Lima* in *Peru*, to prevent, or ſeize upon any Ships that ſhould attempt to find a North-weſt Paſſage to the *South Sea*.

II. An Abſtract of all the Diſcoveries which have been publiſh'd of the Iſlands and Countries in and adjoining to the *Great Weſtern Ocean*, between *America*, *India*, and *China*, &c. pointing out the Advantages that may be made, if a ſhort Paſſage ſhould be found thro' *Hudſon's* Streight to that Ocean.

III. The *Hudſon's Bay* Company's Charter.

IV. The Standard of Trade in thoſe Parts of *America*; with an Account of the Exports and Profits made annually by the *Hudſon's Bay* Company.

V. Vocabularies of the Languages of ſeveral *Indian* Nations adjoining to *Hudſon's Bay*.

The whole intended to ſhew the great Probability of a NORTH-WEST PASSAGE, ſo long deſired; and which (if diſcovered) would be of the higheſt Advantage to theſe Kingdoms.

By *ARTHUR DOBBS*, Eſq;

LONDON:

Printed for J. ROBINSON, at the *Golden Lion* in *Ludgate-Street*.

M DCC XLIV.

RPJCB

TO THE

KING.

SIR,

THE Divine Providence having called Your Auguſt Family to the Government of the *Britiſh* Empire, and placed Your Majeſty on the Throne, to be the Guardian of our Civil and Religious Liberties; not content with ſecuring theſe ineſtimable Bleſſings to Your own, Your Majeſty extends Your auſpicious Regards to other Nations: Thoſe of *Europe* have already experienced the happy Influence of Your Royal Care, and hope for the Reſtoration of Peace, and Continuance of their Tranquillity, and future Proſperity, from the Succeſs of Your Arms, and the Wiſdom of Your Counſels. While Your Majeſty is aſſerting and defending the Rights of Princes abroad, Your *Britiſh* Dominions reap the Fruits of Your gracious and Prudent Adminiſtration; extending their Commerce, increaſing in Wealth, and flouriſhing with Arts and Sciences. Since theſe Advantages for Your People are the perpetual Objects of Your Care, permit me, SIR, to implore

implore Your Royal Patronage of the following Sheets, which are publiſhed with no other View than that of increaſing the Commerce and Riches of Your Kingdoms: An Intention that muſt always be agreeable to Your Majeſty, which they are calculated to improve, by opening a new Field of Trade, where vaſt Improvements may be made, and Nations yet unknown may be made happy, and contribute to raiſe the Power and Fame of *Britain*; from whence Your Sacred Name will derive additional Honour, and Your Realms a conſiderable Increaſe of Wealth and Happineſs.

That Your Majeſty's Reign may be long and glorious, over a free and grateful People, is the ardent Wiſh and Prayer of,

May it pleaſe Your Majeſty,

Your Majeſty's

moſt dutiful,

and moſt obedient

Subject and Servant,

ARTHUR DOBBS.

A New MAP of Part of NORTH AMERICA
From the Latitude of 40 to 68 Degrees. Including the late discoveries made on Board the Furnace Bomb Ketch in 1742. And the Western Rivers & Lakes falling into Nelson River in Hudson's Bay, as described By JOSEPH LA FRANCE a French Canadese Indian, who Traveled thro those Countries and Lakes for 3 Years from 1739 to 1742.
Cumberland Bay
Davy's Straits
GREEN LAND
Forbisher's Streits
Cape Farewel
ATLANTIC
OCEAN
Davy's Inlet
Straits of Belle Isle
NEW FOUND LAND
Placentia
Cape Hope
Cape Frigid
Wager Strait
Cape Dobbs
Whalebone Pt.
Cape Fullerton
Cape Comfort
Mill Isles
Sea Horse Pt.
Salisbury Isle
Rankin's Inlet
The Welcome
Brook Cobham or Marble Isle
Lovegrove's opening
Whale Cove
Cary's Swans Nest
Cape Diggs
Hudson's Strait
Mansel's Isle
Resolution Isle
Button's Isle
North Sleepers
West Sleepers
Bakers Dozen
Cape Smith
New Discover'd Sea
Hudson's Bay
River of Seals
Churchill River
Nelson River
The Great Fork
Cape Henrietta Maria
New Severn River
LABARADOR or NEW BRITAIN
Viners Isle
Charleton Isle
Albany River
Ruperts River
Moose River
French mans River
Nodway River
Unknown Coast
Plascotez de Chiens or Tete Plat Nation
Vieux Hommes Nation
River de Vieux Hommes
Lake Pachegoia
Assinibouels of the Woods N
Lake Cariboux
Lake de Siens
Panis Blanc N
Assinibouels of the Meadows N
Little Lake Ouinipique
Cris or Cristinaux N
Nation de Beaux Hommes
Lake of Eagles
Eagle Eyed Indians
Red or L. Rouge
Great L. Ouinipique
Sturgeon Indians
Lake of Woods or of Isles
Monsoni Indians
Le Sioux Indians
Lake de Pluis
Lake du Pique
Ouasoi Indians
Superior Lake
Michipicoton
Epinette Indians
Sauteurs Indians
Nepisin Indians
St. Marie
Lake Nepisin
Missilimakinac
Manatoualin Isle
Huron Lake
Bay of Sakinac
Puants Lake
Illinese Lake
Fort St. Joseph
Lake St. Clair
Great fall of Niagara
Conti or Errie Lake
Illinese Indians
Illinese River
Ouabach or Ohio River
Mississippi River
Long River
Mozemleek
Lake Tahuglauk
Cape Blanco
PART OF CALIFORNIA
NEW FRANCE
Tadousac
Gulph of St. Laurence
Anticost Isle
Quebec
Trois Rivieres
Isle Montreal
River St. Laurence
Lake Frontenac
NOVA SCOTIA or ACADIA
Cape Breton
Straits of Canseaux
Annapolis Royal
Lake Champlain
NEW ENGLAND
NEW YORK
Iroquese 6 Nations
Hudson's River
Delaware River
Cape Cod

A N

ACCOUNT

OF THE

Situation, *Climate* and *Trade*, of the COUNTRIES adjoining to *Hudson*'s *Bay*, &c.

HUDSON's *Bay* is a great inland Sea, situated betwixt 51 and 65 Degrees North Latitude, and from 78 to 95 West Longitude from *London*, being in Length from *Nodway* and *Moose* Rivers, in the Bottom of the Bay, to *Whalebone Point*, 14 Degrees; which, at 69 *English* Miles to a Degree, is about 970 Miles; and in Breadth from *Digg*'s *Isle*, the East Entrance of the Bay, to the Land Westward of *Churchill River*, 200 Leagues, of 20 to a Degree, 690 Miles, surrounded by a great Continent, except the Opening of *Hudson*'s *Streight*, and the North-west Side of the Bay, which

to be all broken Land, the ſurrounding Coaſt being above 3000 *Engliſh* Miles.

Theſe Countries, tho' moſt of them are in cold Climates, yet in the coldeſt Parts, even North of the Polar Circle, are inhabited by the *Eſkimaux Indians*; and by the Whalebone and Oil, Skins and Furs got there at preſent, are of conſiderable Advantage to thoſe who are concerned in that Trade; and if the Trade was laid open, would be of vaſtly greater Benefit to *Britain*, by affording a conſiderable Market for our coarſe Woollen and Iron Manufactures; and by forming proper Settlements in healthy and ſhelter'd Situations, out of the ſwampy Grounds, there might be comfortable Settlements made in moſt Places, and very tolerable, even in the worſt and coldeſt Parts of that Continent, which are the North-eaſt and North-weſt Sides of the Bay; but in the Southern and Weſtern Sides of the Bay, there might be made as comfortable Settlements as any in *Sweden*, *Livonia*, or the South Side of the *Baltick*; and farther into the Country South-weſt, the Climate is as good as the Southern Part of *Poland*, and North Part of *Germany* and *Holland*; nothing being wanting to make it ſo, but the building convenient Houſes with Stoves, ſuch as are uſed in the ſame Climates in *Europe*.

The Reaſon why the Manner of living there at preſent appears to be ſo diſmal to us in *Britain*, is intirely owing to the Monopoly and Avarice of the *Hudſon*'s *Bay* Company, (not to give it a harſher Name) who, to deter others from trading there, or making Settlements, conceal all the Advantages to be made in that Country, and give out, that the Climate, and Country, and Paſſage thither, are much worſe, and more dangerous, than they really are, and vaſtly worſe than might be, if thoſe Seas were more frequented, and proper Settlements and Improvements were made, and proper Situations choſen for that Purpoſe; this they do, that they may ingroſs a beneficial Trade to themſelves, and therefore oblige their Captains not to make any Charts or Journals that may diſcover thoſe Seas or Coaſts, in order to prevent others from ſailing to their Factories. They alſo prevent their Servants from giving any Account of the Climate or Countries adjacent, that might be favourable, and induce others to trade and ſettle there; nor do they encourage their Servants, or even allow them to make any Improvements without their Factories, unleſs it be a Turnip Garden;

Garden; confining them all the Summer Seaſon, during the Time of the *Indian* Trade, within their Factories, leſt they ſhould trade by Stealth with the Natives, and by a Crane let down their Goods to the Natives, and take up their Furs and Skins in Exchange; by which Means no Improvement can be made but their Kitchen Garden adjoining to their Factories; nor can any comfortable Settlements be made; for they, not having thirty Men in any of their Factories, dare not go at any Diſtance either to improve or make Diſcoveries, their whole Time being employed in cutting and carrying Wood for their Winter Firing, and catching Fiſh, and killing Geeſe, for their Winter Proviſions; in which the Natives generally aſſiſt them, by ſhooting for them in the Swamps, they depending upon *Britain* for all other Things for their Suſtenance; which, if Settlements were made in proper Places, might very well be raiſed and procured in thoſe Countries.

I therefore think myſelf obliged, from the Accounts publiſhed by the *French*, and from what I have had communicated to me by thoſe who have reſided there, or have been employed in that Trade, and particularly from what I have collected from *Joſeph la France*, a *French Canadeſe Indian*, who was born near the *French* Lakes, and lived and traded from theſe Lakes to *Monreal* and *Quebec* for above thirty Years, and having ſurrounded the ſuperior Lake, had, in a Journey of three Years, paſſed from thence to *York Fort*, on *Nelſon River*, through all the Lakes and Rivers on the South-weſt Side of the Bay, and came over in *September*, 1742, from thence: I ſay, I think myſelf obliged to make publick all I can depend upon of the Climate, Soil, Lakes and Rivers, contiguous to the Bay, and the *Indian* Nations adjoining, and alſo what Improvements this ſpacious Country is capable of, and of the great Benefit which may be made of the Trade, in caſe it be laid open, and Settlements be made there: For by that Means the Fur Trade might be vaſtly enlarged, and be intirely recovered from the *French*, which they have now in great Meaſure gained from us by the Monopoly and Avarice of the Company, upon account of the exorbitant Prices they take for their Goods from the Natives, even to 2000 *per Cent*. Profit; who, for that Reaſon, ſell their moſt valuable Furs to the *French*, tho' the Carriage to *Canada* be near 200 Leagues farther than to our Factories.

Since the Eaſtern Main of *Hudſon*'s *Bay*, otherwiſe called *Terra de Labarador*, extends to the *Atlantick* Ocean, North of *Newfoundland*, in which many of the *Eſkimaux Indians* live, who feed upon raw Fleſh and Fiſh, preſerved in the Winter by Froſt; I ſhall, in this Deſcription of the Bay, take notice of the Eaſt Coaſt of that Country, ſo far as it is known, from the Streight of *Bell Iſle* in *Newfoundland*, in 52 Degrees, to *Button*'s *Iſle*, at the Entrance into *Hudſon*'s *Streight*, in about 61 Degrees, which extends about 620 Miles.

This Coaſt, from *Hudſon*'s *Streight* to 57°, is peſter'd with Ice in the Beginning of Summer, occaſioned by the Quantity which comes out from the ſeveral Inlets there, as well as that which comes from *Hudſon*'s and *Davis*'s *Streights*, theſe Iſlands of Ice being frequently carried as far as the Banks of *Newfoundland*, before they are diſſolved; but the reſt of the Coaſt to the Southward, from 57 to 52°, is free from Ice.

Along that Coaſt a very fine Fiſhery might be carried on, there being as fine and large Fiſh there as any upon the Coaſt of *Newfoundland*; and at the ſame time a Trade for Furs might be introduced with the Natives, the Furs upon the Eaſt Main being as fine as any in *America*, and richer than thoſe to the Southward. The *French* from *Canada* get the moſt of theſe at preſent, there being none to interfere with them in that Trade, it being too far from the Factories in the Bay, and at preſent it is open to any who ſhould go there to trade or fiſh; and it would *prevent the Natives*, by getting a Market nearer Home, from going ſo far to trade with the *French*; our Goods alſo could be afforded cheaper than the *French* Goods from *Canada*.

In the Latitude 56°. is a very great and bold Inlet to this Country, into which Captain *Davis* ſail'd 10, and Captain *Weymouth* afterwards 30 Leagues, which was 2 Leagues wide; the Sea, Inlet and Coaſt, was full of the fineſt Cod that *Davis* had ever ſeen; there were great Numbers of all ſorts of Land and Water-fowl, and the Country full of fine Woods, of Fir, Pine, Alder, Yew, Withy and Birch; he coaſted that Land to the Southward of the Inlet four or five Days, and found it improve in Woods and low Grounds, with fair Inlets, and vaſt Numbers of Cod. It is ſurprizing that none of late have attempted to begin a Trade there with the Natives; at firſt they might not only make ſaving, but beneficial

beneficial Voyages, by the Fiſh to be caught there, and alſo by naval Stores; for undoubtedly the Timber and Maſts there are ſtronger and more durable than thoſe which grow in *New-England*, they being of a ſlower Growth, as it is a colder Climate, and conſequently the Timber would be cloſer in the Grain, and tougher, as well as more durable.

It is more than probable that this, or ſome other Inlet near it, may go into the Heart of that Country, which ſeems to be made up of Iſlands near *Hudſon's Streight*; for a great inland Sea has been diſcovered lately within the Eaſt Main from *Hudſon's Bay*, betwixt *Sleepers Iſle* and Cape *Smith*, in Lat. 59°. which is 2 or 300 Leagues in Circumference, and probably may have a Communication with ſome of theſe Inlets.

The Entrance of *Hudſon's Streight*, betwixt *Button's Iſle* to the Southward, in about Lat. 61°. and Cape *Warwick*, the South End of *Reſolution Iſle*, in Lat. 61°, 25′, and Long. 64° Weſt from *London*, is about 13 Leagues wide. In the South Side is a great Bay or Inlet never yet ſailed into; here the Variation is 40° Weſt, the Depth 200 Fathoms in the Channel. Beyond this, about 87 Leagues from the Entrance, is Cape *Hope*; further Weſtward is Prince *Henry*'s *Foreland* and Cape *Charles*; and at the Weſt End of the Streight, and South Side is Cape *Diggs*, in Lat. 62°. 42′. and Long. 77°. 45′. Weſt 140 Leagues from *Reſolution Iſle*, which is the whole Length of the Streight.

From Cape *Charles* to the Weſtern *Savage Iſle*, in the Middle of the Streight, it is 15 Leagues in Breadth; and at the Weſt End, from Cape *Diggs* to Cape *Charles*, on the North Shore, the Streight is enlarged to 20 Leagues.

There are ſeveral great Bays and Inlets in the South Side, with Head-lands and Iſlands, it being all a broken Coaſt, crowded with Ice in the Beginning of Summer; ſome of theſe probably communicate with the inland Sea lately diſcovered upon the Eaſt Main.

The North Shore is alſo a broken Land, full of Inlets and Iſlands; the firſt were called the Iſles of *God's Mercy*, the next were called *Savage Iſles*, about 60 Leagues from the Entrance. Beyond theſe is *Nicholas Iſle*, Cape *Cook*, on the Eaſt Side of it, and Cape *Dorſet* to the Weſtward; theſe laſt were ſo named by *Fox*. Ten Leagues W. N. W. is Prince *Charles's Foreland*, the North-

North-weſt Side of the Streight. Five Leagues North-weſt from this is King *Charles*'s *Promontary*, in Lat. 64°. 46′; and ſix Leagues Northward of that Promontary, in Lat. 65°. 13′. is Cape *Maria*. In Lat. 65°. 26. is Cape *Dorcheſter*, near which are three Iſlands called *Trinity Iſles*. North of theſe is *Cooks Iſle*, and North-eaſt of this, in Lat. 66°. 35′. is Lord *Weſton*'s *Portland*; beyond which the Land falls off to the Eaſtward toward *Cumberland*'s Inlet.

At the Entrance of the Bay, in Lat. 63°. 30′. Long. 78°. Weſt, is *Saliſbury Iſle*; and to the Weſtward of it *Nottingham Iſle*, North-weſt of which lie *Mill Iſles*, in Lat. 64°. 20′. Long. 80′. 30′. Weſt. All the Coaſt on each Side the Streight is very high, covered with Snow, and the Coaſt crowded with Iſlands of Ice, until the latter End of Summer, when it is moſtly diſcharged into the Ocean, or diſſolved by the Sun. There are great Numbers of Sea-horſes, Seals and White Bears ſeen there; but no other Fiſh are ſeen, nor any Whales, except a little Way within the Entrance, as they paſs to *Davis*'s *Streight*.

At the Entrance of the Bay, 14 Leagues Weſt from Cape *Diggs*, is *Manſel*'s *Iſle*, which is 20 Leagues long, and about 3 Leagues broad. It is a low flat Iſland, not to be ſeen above three or four Miles from the Deck in clear Weather, with deep Water cloſe to the Shore. The North End is in Lat. 62°. 40′. and Long. 79°. 5′. Weſt.

The Coaſt upon the Eaſt Main, Eaſt of the Bay, from Cape *Diggs* to the Bottom of the Bay in 51°. to *Rupert*'s and *Nodway* Rivers, is very little known. There are many Iſlands at ſome Diſtance from the Coaſt, as the *North Sleepers*, twenty Leagues from the Coaſt, in Lat. 61°. and the *Weſtern Sleepers* in 59°. Betwixt theſe on the Main is Cape *Smith*, near which was lately found an Inlet to that great inland Sea before-mentioned. In 59°. South of the *Weſtern Sleepers*, are a Number of Iſlands called the *Baker's Dozen*. There are many more nameleſs Iſlands ſcattered along the Coaſt towards the Bottom of the Bay, from thence to 53°. where the Coaſt begins to be low and full of Trees. In about 52°. is *Slude River*, where the Company have a Houſe and ſeven or eight Servants. To the Northward of it is a Rock of clear Stone, which proves to be *Muſcovy* Glaſs. To the Southward of *Slude* River, in 51°. is *Rupert*'s River, diſcovered by *Zachariah Gillam* in 1667, where the Company eſtabliſhed their firſt Factory. He

 found

found eight Feet Water at the Entrance, and anchor'd within it in 2 Fathoms and a half in fresh Water. The River there was a Mile broad; its Course came from E. S. E. it flow'd in that River eight Feet. All the Trees were Spruce except on an Island in the River, which was full of Poplars. From that to St. *Margaret*'s River, which falls into the River St. *Laurence*, is about 150 Leagues. A little to the Southward of this is *Frenchman*'s River, which cometh from the S. E. and a little to Southward is *Nodway*'s River, which runneth from the S. S. E. This last is five Miles broad to the Falls, full of Islands and Rocks, upon which Geese breed. There are also great Numbers of Duck, Teal and Plover. To the Westward of this is Point *Comfort*, where are many Seals, and some white Whales, as big as Grampus'.

About eight Days Journey from *Nodway*'s River to the Westward, in the Bottom of the Bay, is *Moose* River or *Monsipi*, in 51°. 28'. Lat. This is a very large River, upon which the Company have a Factory, and might have a very considerable Trade. About twenty Leagues from this River in 52°. is *Albany* River, or *Kichichouan*, another very large River upon which the Company have a Factory, which runneth from the W. S. W. Northward from this on the West Coast, is a small River called *Equon*, not regarded, nor any Thing observable upon that Coast; from thence to Cape *Henrietta Maria* in 55°. from the *Moose* River to this Cape is about 80 Leagues, and the Breadth of the Bay here about 50 Leagues; at the Bottom of the Bay it is about 40 Leagues wide; in that Space are many Islands, *Viner*'s Island near the West Shore in Lat. 52°. is 30 Leagues in Circuit; Lord *Weston*'s Isle in Lat. 53°. 5'; *Roe*'s in Lat. 52°. 10'. full of small Wood; *Denbigh*'s and *Charleton*'s in Lat. 52°. 3'. on the last Captain *James* wintered in 1632; *Hay*'s Island more southerly, on which the Company had once a Factory; *Robinson*'s and *Willow* Island near the South Shore, and many other nameless Islands.

From Cape *Henrietta Maria* the Coast falls away to the W. N. W. and the Bay is enlarged.

In Lat. 56°. is the River *Savanne*, or *New Severn*, called by the *French St. Huiles*, a fine River, tho' not deep, call'd by the *Indians Kouachoue*; it is full of Woods within Land, and Pools of Water, in which Beavers abound, and many other Beasts of rich Furs.

North-

North-weſt from this River, in Lat. 57°. is *Nelſon River*, call'd by the *French* the River *Bourbon*. In *Hay*'s Iſland, upon this River, is *York Fort*, a Factory belonging to the Company. This is a noble, fine River, running through many Lakes, for ſome hundred Leagues, from the South-weſt; it is of difficult Entrance, the Water without of a red, muddy, ſandy Colour, and ſhallow, not 7 or 8 Fathom out of Sight of Land: There are two ſmall Iſlands to the South-eaſtward of it, at 4 Leagues Diſtance, it is ſhoal, and full of Breakers, where they muſt conſtantly uſe the Lead; the Tide here riſes from 9 to 12 Feet. Forty Leagues to Northward of this is the *Daniſh* or *Churchill River*, in Lat. 58°, 56′, a noble River, and a deep, bold Entrance; the Tide flows here from 10 to 14 Feet. Here is the Prince of *Wales*'s Fort, upon which they have 40 Guns mounted: This is the Company's chief Factory, and is new built of Lime and Stone; it ſtands elevated 40 Feet high, on the North-weſt Side of the River, within two Points, one called *Cape Merry*, the other *Eſkimaux Point*. On the South-eaſt Side of the Point is *Ward*'s Mount; 15 Leagues to the Northward is the River the *French* call *Loup Marine*, or *River of Seals*; in Lat. 59°. 40′. is the Place call'd *Hubbart's Hope*, and in 60°. 30′. Cape *Eſkimaux*; in Lat. 61°. is *Hopes check'd*; a flat ſand Coaſt, with Iſlands lying off it; in Lat. 61°. 40′. are three Iſlands at ſome Diſtance from the Coaſt; from thence to Lat. 62°. is a broken Coaſt full of Iſlands, called by *Fox*, *Briggs*'s *Mathematicks*. The Company at preſent ſend a Sloop to this Latitude annually from *Churchill* to *Whale Cove*, where they trade with the *Eſkimaux* for Whale-fin and Oil, there being plenty of Whales from that Place along the Coaſt to 65°. all the Coaſt being a broken Land, full of Iſlands and Inlets. In Lat. 62°. 30′ is *Dun Fox's* Iſland, with many Iſlands betwixt it and the ſuppos'd Main. In Lat. 63°. is an Iſland called *Marble Iſland*, or *Brook Cobham* by Captain *Middleton*, tho' not the ſame ſo called by *Fox*, within 3 Leagues of the Coaſt; it is about 7 Leagues long, and 3 broad, its Length from Eaſt to Weſt; on the South-ſide is a fine Cove ſafe from all Winds, an Iſland lying croſs the Entrance, and an Opening in the Coaſt Weſtward of the Iſland, from whence the Tide flowed with a great Current; the Tide ſometimes riſing there 22 Feet; it is in Long. 93°. 40′. Weſt from *London*. On this Iſland are white Bears, Deer, Swans, Ducks, and other Water-fowl.

To the North-eaſtward of this Iſland, in Lat. 63°, 20′, is a Head-land, near which were many Whales ſeen by Captain *Middleton* upon his Return; he took it to be a Head-land upon the Main; but *Fox* called this *Brook Cobham,* and ſays it is an Iſland of white Marble, ſix or ſeven Miles long, upon which he hunted a Rain-deer, and got Swans and other Fowl, and ſaw forty Whales ſleeping near it; betwixt it and the Coaſt was all broken Shelves, and a great Bay betwixt the high Land to the North, and the low Ground to the Southward; there was a Cove or Harbour on the Eaſt Side, where a Ship might lie in Safety in two Fathoms at low Water. From this Iſland or Head-land is a great Bay in Land, and then another Head-land in Lat. 64°, 10′, which is alſo an Iſland, Soundings betwixt them from 35 to 72 Fathoms, all within is broken Land and Iſlands. This Head-land *Scroggs* called Cape *Fullerton*; this was *Fox*'s *Welcome,* and *Button*'s *Ne Ultra.* Here is a great Bay, an Opening betwixt this and *Whalebone Point,* in Lat. 64°, 56′, in which *Scroggs* ſaw many Whales, and Captain *Norton* from a high Land ſaw an open Sea leading to the Southward of the Weſt.

North-eaſt of this Point, in Lat. 65°, 10′, Long. 88°, 6′ Weſt, a fair Cape or Head-land was diſcovered by Captain *Middleton,* which he called *Cape Dobbs*; to the Northward of which was an Opening, River or Streight, which at the Entrance, in Lat. 65°, 24, was ſix or ſeven Miles wide, and from 14 to 44 Fathoms deep in the mid Channel; it continued of that Breadth for 4 or 5 Miles; 4 Leagues higher it was 4 or 5 Leagues wide; and higher up even to 30 Leagues. It was from 8 to 10 Leagues wide, and above 70 Fathom deep. The Courſe of the River was about N. Weſt by Compaſs, which Variation allowed of 35°, is about W. by N. At a high Bluff, on the South-weſt Side, 30 Leagues up the River, they ſaw a large Streight or River, 4 or 5 Leagues wide, running W. S. W. with high, mountainous, broken Lands, on each Side. The Tide flowed from the Eaſtward at the Mouth of the River, and in the Narrows 5 or 6 Miles in an Hour. At the Entrance, without in the *Welcome,* and for a conſiderable Way up the River, it was choaked with Ice, driving backwards and forwards with the Tide. At 16 Leagues Diſtance from the Entrance was a Sound 6 or 7 Miles wide, and below it a very large, ſafe Harbour, capable of containing a Fleet in Safety; the Sound

he called *Deer Sound.* He anchored in a Cove 8 Leagues below it, within ſome Iſles which he called *Savage Sound.* The upper Part of the River was almoſt clear of Ice, and many true Whales in it, but none below, nor without the River; this Streight he called *Wager Streight.*

To the North-eaſt of this is another Streight, running N. N. E. to Cape *Hope*, ſo called by him, upon Pretence of his Expectation of its being the North Point of *America*, in Lat. 66°; 40′. To the North-weſt and North of this, is a great Bay, about 20 Leagues deep, and 8 or 10 wide, quite ſurrounded with Land, except to the Eaſtward, where he gave out, upon his going to Land, that there was a Streight frozen over, leading to the South-eaſt, from 4 to 7 Leagues wide, full of Iſlands, through which the Tide flowed; but by others who were on Shore, it appears there was no ſuch Streight nor Tide, but only a narrow Sound around an Iſland, upon which they ſtood, about 3 Leagues wide, where was no Tide but what flowed from the Southward up the Streight from the *Welcome*, which ended in the Bay, in which they found no Tide nor Current. The North Point of this Iſland he called *Cape Frigid*; and to the Southward of the Sound, South of the Iſland, was a low Beachy Point, but high Lands to the Eaſtward of it, and ſo round to the Northward. From this Beachy Point to Cape *Hope*, the Streight was 7 or 8 Leagues wide; and from it, along the Eaſt Side of the *Welcome*, as far as Lat. 64°, was a low contiguous Beachy Coaſt, and ſo on to Cape *Southampton*, in about Lat. 62°; from whence the Coaſt is Eaſterly to *Cary*'s *Swan's Neſt*; from thence to Cape *Naſdrake* N. E. in Lat. 62°. 40′. Long. 83°. 50′. Weſt; thence Northerly to Cape *Pembrook*, in Lat. 63°. 30′. *Shark*, or *Sea-Horſe Point*, North of this, in Lat. 64°. 10′. and Cape *Comfort*, in Lat. 65°. 85′. Weſt; from whence the Land falls away North-weſt towards his imaginary frozen Streight. On the other Side of a Bay, E. N. E. from this Point, is Lord *Weſton*'s *Portland*, already mentioned, on the North-weſt of *Hudſon*'s *Streight*, where the Land falls away towards *Cumberland*'s Inlet; ſo far *Fox* had failed. This is the whole Extent of the Bay and Streights adjoining to it that are yet known or divulged.

Having given this ſhort Deſcription of the Coaſt of *Hudſon*'s *Bay* and Streights adjoining, as far as any thing has been publiſhed, or is come to my Knowledge by private Journals or Information, the

the Company concealing, as much as they can, all Things relating to the Commerce and Navigation of the Bay, as well as of the Climate and Countries adjoining; I ſhall, before I make any general Obſervations upon the Rivers, Soil, Climates, and Produce of the ſeveral adjoining Countries, give ſome ſhort Abſtracts of Journals relating to the Seaſons and Weather in different Parts of the Bay, and afterwards give ſuch Deſcriptions of theſe Countries as the *French* have publiſhed, and what I have collected from ſome who have been there, and particularly from *Joſeph la France*, the *French Canadeſe Indian*, already mentioned.

The firſt Journal that can be depended upon for Obſervations upon wintering in this Bay, is that of Captain *James* in *Charleton Iſland*, in Lat. 52°. for *Hudſon*'s and *Button*'s Journals are not to be found.

He wintered there in 1632; he was obliged to take Harbour in the Beginning of *October*, the Snow and Ice began in that Month, but the Sea was not frozen cloſe to the Iſland until the Middle of *December*. The Cold was very intenſe until the Middle of *April*, unto thoſe who had no Place to reſide in, but a Tent covered with their Sails, and ſuch Branches of ſmall Spruce as that Iſland afforded; and conſequently in ſuch a Situation they endured great Hardſhips in ſo long a Winter, ſurrounded by a Sea all covered with Ice, for a long Time after it was diſſolved upon the Lands adjoining to the Bay. The 29th of *April* it rained all Day. The third of *May* the Snow was melted in many Places of the Iſland. The thirteenth the Weather was very warm in the Day-time, but there was ſtill Froſt in the Night. The 24th the Ice was conſumed along the Shore, and crack'd all over the Bay, and began to float by the Ship. The 30th the Water was clear of Ice betwixt the Shore and the Ship, and ſome Vetches appeared. The 15th of *June* the Sea was ſtill frozen over, and the Bay full of Ice. The 16th was very hot, with Thunder. The 19th they ſaw ſome open Sea, and by the 20th all the Ice was drove to the Northward. This Iſland was a dry Sand, covered with a white Moſs, and ſmall Shrubs and Buſhes, no Trees but Spruce and Juniper, the longeſt a Foot and a Half over. The Sea to Northward was full of floating Ice until the 22d of *July*.

The next that wintered in the Bottom of the Bay was Captain *Gillam*, in the *Nonſuch Catch*, in 1668; it was *September* before he

he got to the Bottom of the Bay, where he was embay'd betwixt *Rupert*'s, *Frenchman*'s, and *Nodway Rivers*. He got into *Rupert*'s *River* the 29th of *September*, and came to an Anchor in two Fathoms and a Half Water, the River was a Mile broad. The 9th of *December* they were frozen up in the River, and went upon the Ice to a ſmall Iſland full of Poplars, all the other Trees were Spruce. In *April* 1669, the Cold was almoſt over, and the *Indians* came down to them. They ſaw no Grain there, but many Gooſeberries, Strawberries, and Dewotter Berries. The *Indians* about that River are ſimpler than thoſe of *Canada*. The *Nodways* or *Eſkimaux Indians*, near *Hudſon*'s *Streight*, are wild and barbarous. In 1670 the Ice began in *Rupert*'s *River* on the 10th of *October*, but they had warm Weather after that. The River was frozen over the 6th of *November*, they then ſhot white Partridges in *Petre River* to Northward of them, and at *Frenchman*'s *River*, a great River to Southward of them. The Snow that Year was 7 or 8 Feet thick, tho' in 1673 it was but 4 Feet thick. The firſt of *February* they had ſuch a Change of Weather, that it rather thawed than froze. About the 20th of *March* it began to thaw, and the firſt of *April* the Geeſe returned; the River was thawed the 20th of *April*.

The next is an Abſtract of a Journal kept at *Albany River*, in Lat. 52°. one of the Factories belonging to the Company, from *October* 1729, to the Year 1731, giving an exact Account of the Weather and Climate, and how they ſpent their Time there.

The Froſt began in *October* 1729, about which time the Geeſe, that returned from the Northward to that River in *Auguſt*, departed from thence to the more ſouthern Countries. The Creek near the Factory was frozen over the 13th; by the 21ſt there was a great deal of Ice floating in the River; by the 31ſt it was faſt as far as *Charles* Creek; by the 5th of *November* the whole River was frozen over, but not ſo ſtrong as to bear; the Weather was temperate with ſome Snow to the 27th; all the Month of *December* was interchangeably three or four Days cold, and then a temperate Froſt, with ſome Snow; the Month of *January* much the ſame, cold and temperate interchangeably; the Month of *February* was variable, but moſtly moderate, at Intervals warm, and then ſharp Weather; *March*, to the 8th, was warm temperate Froſt; from that Time to the 17th fine clear Weather, with

ſome Snow; thence to 29th clear Weather tolerably warm; on the 30th a Storm of Snow, and then it began to thaw in the middle of the Day; it continued thawing till the 5th of *April*, then two Days Froſt, it thawed again until the 13th, when the Geeſe returned from the Southward; then to 17th raw cold Weather; 18th warm and Rain; then interchangeably warm, and raw Weather, until the 28th; when the Froſt was broke up in the Country by the Freſhes coming down; the 29th the Ice gave Way to the Head of the Iſland, and next Day drove down to *Baily*'s Iſland, when all the Marſhes were overflowed, the Bay being not yet thawed; the Ice continued driving in the River until the 5th of *May*, then the River fell five Feet, by the breaking up of the Ice at Sea; the 7th they had Thunder and Rain, the Ice ſtill driving in the River; the 8th the *Indians* came down in their Canoes to trade; to 13th they had raw cold Weather; 16th they began to dig their Garden; 22d the Tide began to flow regularly; the 23d they ſowed their Turnips, the Geeſe went then to the Northward to breed; raw cold Weather until the 29th; 30th variable Weather, with ſome Hail and Snow; from that Time to the 12th of *July* fine warm Weather, and then to the 7th of *September*, warm or very hot Weather; to the 18th warm and temperate; then to 25th variable and temperate, with ſome Rain; then Froſt in the Night; fine Weather until the 29th; *October* 2d and 3d, Snow and ſome Froſt in the Night; then to the 9th moderate Weather, with ſome Snow and Froſt in the Night; to the 12th fine Weather; ſtop'd Fiſhing, having no Froſt to freeze the Fiſh; to the 24th fine warm Weather with ſmall Froſt; the 28th Ice in the River and the Geeſe going away; *November* 13th the River full of heavy Ice; the 18th it was frozen over, but ſtill moderate Weather; the Winter was not ſo ſevere as the former, the Geeſe returned the 14th of *April* 1731, the Freſhes came down *May* 5th, the 12th the Ice was gone to Sea, the 13th the *Indians* came to trade in their Canoes; they had fine warm Weather that Year from the 11th of *May* to the middle of *September*. The *Indians* that came that Year to trade were 35 Canoes of Weſtern *Indians*, 31 of upland *Indians*, 10 of *French Indians*, 1 of ſtrange *Indians*, 22 of *Sturgeon Indians*, 5 of *Home Indians*, 9 of *Jack Indians*, and 5 of *Mooſe River Indians*, 118 in all.

The

The *Beaver* Sloop left the Factory 20th of *August* 1729, to winter in *Slude* River on the East Main, and returned to *Albany* 5th of *July* 1730. *August* 22d Captain *Middleton* arrived at the Factory in the *Hudson's Bay* Frigate, was loaded by the 29th, and failed *September* 1ft for *England*.

The 7th the two Sloops failed for *Moofe* River, to fix a Factory there, in 51°. 28′. This is a much finer and larger River than *Albany*, and navigable for Canoes above the Falls, a great Way to the Southward, towards the Inland Lakes.

July 2d 1731, the *Beaver* Sloop returned from *Slude* River; the 31ft Captain *Middleton* returned, and failed for *Moofe* River the 9th of *Auguft*, and the 21ft failed from thence for *England*; the 28th the *Beaver* Sloop returned to *Slude* River; *November* 10th 1731, *Albany* River was frozen over. So far goes this Journal.

If I may depend upon a fhort Sketch mentioned by *Fox* from *Button*'s Journal, of his wintering in *Nelfon* River, in 57°. in 1612, it would appear that the Winter was not fo long or fevere at Port *Nelfon*, as at *Albany* in 52°. occafioned, I fuppofe, from the Strength and Heighth of the Tide there, which rifes near 14 Feet, when at *Albany* it does not rife above 4 Feet; for he fays, altho' the River was not above a Mile over, it was not frozen over that Year until the 16th of *February*; and they had feveral warm thawing Days before, and the River was clear of Ice the 21ft of *April*: But by this Journal, *Albany* River was frozen over the Beginning of *November*, and the Ice did not break up at the Factory until the Beginning of *May*. I have feen no late Journal of the Weather at *York* Fort, on the Southern Branch of *Nelfon* River, fo can't tell whether the Climate be fuch now, as is here reprefented. But fince the Winter 1741 was fo fevere at *Churchill* River, only 2°. more northerly than *Nelfon* River, of which the following Journal was taken by Captain *Middleton*, I fhould fuppofe this more fevere than ufual, or wrote with a View to ferve the Company, by fetting it forth in its worft Colours, or the Climate at *York* Fort is more fevere than is here mentioned from *Button*'s Journal.

Captain *Middleton* arrived at *Churchill* River the 10th of *Auguft* 1741, the Weather was moderate and fair, with Calms until the 24th; the Home *Indians* having been gone into the Country,

they ſent to *York* Fort for *Indians* to kill Geeſe for their Winter Store, before they went to the Southward; they ſunk a Pit ſix Feet deep in the new Fort to put their Beer in, to preſerve it from the Winter's Froſt, which they covered eight Feet high above Ground with Earth and Horſe Dung; the 26th was ſtormy with Rain.

The firſt Snow they had was on the 1ſt of *September*, the Geeſe then going to the Southward; cold blowing Weather with Snow Showers until the 8th, the Ground ſtill marſhy and Boggy; the ſame Weather until the 13th; moderate Weather, with ſome Rain and Thunder until the 22d; 23d freezing, with ſmall Snow; 27th the Thermometer as low as in *London* in the great Froſt, they killed 100 white Partridges before the cold Weather came on; they then went to the Woods; 30th the River full of floating Ice driving out with the Ebb; *October* 1ſt the Ice faſt along the Shore for two Miles; 7th the River almoſt full of floating Ice, but not much Snow on the Ground; 12th moſt of the Ice that lined the Shore for two Miles above them, drove to Sea, and was out of Sight next Day; the Ice farther up faſt froze, they croſs'd the River upon the Ice eight Miles above the Fort the 9th; 16th the Ice not yet faſt at the Mouth of the River, tho' the Sea was full of Ice when the Wind blew upon the Shore; 17th all the Ice without drove out of Sight; 18th cold Weather now with all Winds; 21ſt Water and Ink freeze by the Bedſide; 22d the River ſtill open in ſeveral Places. The Company's Servants take white Foxes, which are plenty here; from 18th to 27th moderate calm Weather, but hard Froſt, the Snow in many Places 10 or 12 Feet deep; no ſtirring without Snow Shoes, 5 Feet long, and 18 Inches broad; high Winds and much Snow till the 30th; 31ſt cold with thick Fog; ſome of the Company's Men came home from Wooding and Hunting, having their Necks and Faces frozen. *November* 2d the Ice drives in and out each Tide, but no Water to be ſeen at Sea, nor above a Mile up the River; the 9th a Bottle of Spirits full Proof, ſet out at Night was frozen; they ſtill get white Foxes and Partridges near the Fort, tho' not ſo plenty as in former Years; 11th hard Gales and ſtormy, no going out without being froze; 12th the River now faſt froze at the Entrance; 15th ſet up Beacons croſs the River to guide them, the Ice 4 or 5 Feet thick; not yet faſt above a Mile from Shore;

the Weather ſometimes moderate, ſometimes ſevere, until the 10th of *December*; they got to that Time 1500 Partridges; 14th ſo cold an *Indian* ſeventy Years old was ſtarved to Death under the Walls of the Fort in his Tent; 22d moſt of the Factory's Men, who had been Hunting and Fiſhing, returned for a Fortnight to keep *Chriſtmas*; 30th moderate warm Weather, ſix Home *Indians* came from the Northward with Buffalo's Fleſh and Goods for Trade; they were five Months from the Factory, and twenty Days in their Journey home; they ſay their Country is barren and without Wood; very cold from the 1ſt to 9th of *January*; cloſe hazy Weather, very cold from that Time to 18th; the Captain walked five Miles to the old Factory and returned in the Evening; cold Froſt to 24th; got to that Time 300 more Partridges; 29th ſeveral of the Factory's Men came from the Woods for a Fortnight's Proviſions; moſt of them lie in the Woods all the Winter, ſhooting, fiſhing, and cutting fire Wood; got fifteen Jacks from one of them, who fiſhed all the Winter in Holes in the Ice; 31ſt returned again to the Woods; moderate Weather, clear and cold until 8th of *February*; it freezes ſtill hard in the Night; the Weather very cold, but generally clear until the 15th; got to that Time 229 more Partridges; none who lie out in the Woods and exerciſe, are troubled with any Diſtemper; moderate, fair, temperate Weather, with Froſt, until the 2d of *March*; very cold from that Time to the 12th. Several *Indians* came down almoſt ſtarved for want of Food, and ſeveral Wolves. Thirteenth very cold, got 50 Partridges, and 22 Fiſh from his Servant, who had fiſhed all the Winter 25 Miles up the River; 14th and 15th, very cold, hard Gales, and drifting Snow; 16th and 17th, moderate and clear; to 21ſt freſh Gales with Froſt, but fair; 22d moderate, began to repair the Ships; to 27th moderately warm, with ſome Snow in the Nights, the Weather now grown milder; 28 and 29th a great Snow for 30 Hours, the Fort full within and without, as high as the Ramparts; 30th the Storm abated, but very cold; the Ice 3 or 4 Inches thick under the Deck. Cold until the 2d of *April*, then calm and warm, with a clear Sky, the Sun now begins to thaw ſome Places. Fourth drift Snow, but not ſo cold as uſual; 5th to 7th cold freezing Weather. The Water roſe 9 or 10 Feet, the Ice at the Ship 10 Feet thick, and Snow 13 Feet above it; 9th and 10th moderate warm Weather to what they had, ſome Hail,

Hail, and large Flakes of Snow, a Sign the Winter is ſpent, all the Snow for 6 Months being as fine as Duſt; 11th moderate and hazy, got 300 Partridges; 12th to 18th Froſt, with ſome Snow and Sleet; Ink freezes by the Fire; 19th light Airs, and warm in the Day, but cold in the Night; 20th warm, clear Weather, with freſh Gales, the Ice without the Harbour, not faſt, is drove to Sea; but when it drives to the Shore, no End to be ſeen of it; 21ſt and 22d moderate, pleaſant, warm Weather, had a Shower of Rain, none before for 7 Months; 23d freſh Gales, with Froſt, and ſome Snow; the Tide roſe 10 Feet 3 Inches; Froſt and ſome Snow until the 28th, then moderate and fair, with ſome Snow Showers; ſaw a Gooſe that Day, which was killed 4 Miles from the Ship; Froſt, Sleet and Rain, to the 1ſt of *May*; 2d Thunder, Rain and Hail; 3d and 4th cold and Froſt; 5th Fog and Rain; 6th to 10th Froſt and Snow, then moderate, fair Weather; 12th and 13th Hail, with Froſt; 14th to 18th moderate and cloudy, with ſome Rain, freſh Gales, with ſome Snow, Hail and Rain, until the 23d; cloudy and hazy, with ſome Rain, until the 26th; the River opens a little above, but is faſt below; 31ſt moderate and clear. *June* the 1ſt the Ice gave way in the Channel, and drove to Sea, but ſtill faſt on the Flats, near a Mile from the Shore; 2d moderate, fair Weather, Ice driving in and out with the Tide; 3d Thunder and large Hail, very warm after the Shower; 4th moderate and cloudy, with Thunder and Rain; ſhot a white Whale, and got a Barrel of Oil from it; 5th cloudy, moſt of the Ice broke off from the Flats, and drove to Sea; 6th and 7th fair and cloudy; 8th ſqually, with Showers of Rain; the Flats almoſt clear, Ice ſtill driving in the River; 9th and 10th moderate, fair Weather, got the Ship out of her Dock, and moored her; 11th fair Weather, with thick Fog; ſeveral Northern *Indians* came to trade; 13th got the Ship into the Stream, all the Ice gone out of the River; 14th and 15th moderate, hazy Weather; 16th ſqually, Thunder and Rain; ſent a Sloop to the Gooſe Tent, 7 Leagues from the River, for Geeſe; 17th Cloudy, 30 Canoes of upland *Indians* came down to trade; 18th to 20th cloudy; the Sloop returned with 16 Caſks of ſalted Geeſe; employed in watering and digging up their Beer, which was in one Cake of Ice; from that time to the 28th warm and fair, got every thing ready for ſailing.

Since the *Hudſon*'s *Bay* Company conceal as much as poſſible the Nature of the Soil and Climates of the ſeveral Countries within their Grant, as well as the Benefit to be made by their Trade, upon ſuch noble Rivers and Lakes as communicate with the Bay, from the Merchants in *Britain*, leſt they ſhould interfere with them in their Trade; in order to give a better Idea of theſe Countries, before I make any Obſervations upon theſe Journals, I ſhall give a brief Deſcription of theſe Rivers and Lakes on the Weſt Side of the Bay from the *French* Accounts of Monſieur *Jeremie* and *de la Poterie*, and then give the Account I got from *Joſeph la France*, who travelled through all theſe Countries within theſe 3 or 4 Years, and from their Accounts, and theſe Journals, make the beſt Obſervations I can upon the Soil, Climates, and extenſive Trade of theſe great inland Countries and Lakes from *Canada* to the Weſtern Ocean of *America*, and what great Improvements may be made by laying open that Trade, and ſettling in proper Places, on the Rivers which enter into the Bay.

The *French* were in Poſſeſſion of *Fort Bourbon*, which we call now *York Fort*, upon St. *Thereſa*, the Eaſtern Branch of *Nelſon River*, from the Year 1697 to 1714. Monſieur *Jeremie*, who was Lieutenant there from 1697 to 1708, and afterwards Governor, until he gave it up in 1714 to us, gives a very particular Account of that River and the adjoining Countries, great Part of which he affirms to be of his own Knowledge, having travelled a great Way South-weſt into the Country among the Rivers and Lakes.

The *Daniſh* or *Churchill River*, upon which the Company have lately built a ſtrong Stone Fort, he ſays, is ſituated in 59°. North Latitude, and is about 500 Paces wide at the Entrance, for about a Quarter of a League, and is very deep; but within it is much broader, and is navigable into the Country 150 Leagues; there is but little Wood upon this River, near the Bay, except in the Iſlands. At 150 Leagues Diſtance is a Chain of high Mountains, with great Cataracts and Falls of Water; but beyond theſe it is again navigable, and has a Communication with a River called *the River of Stags*.

Fifteen Leagues Northward of this River, is the River of *Loup Marine*, or *River of Seals*; betwixt theſe Rivers is a kind of Ox, called the *Muſk Ox*, which ſmells at ſome Time in the Year

ſo ſtrong of Muſk, that it cannot be eat. They have very fine Wool, which is longer than that of the *Barbary* Sheep; they are ſmaller than *French* Oxen, with very crooked Horns, which turn round like Rams Horns, and are ſo large, that they weigh ſometimes 60 Pounds; they have ſhort Legs, and their Wool trails upon the Ground; they are not numerous.

This River comes from a Country he calls *Platſcotez de Chiens*, who make War againſt the *Savanna Indians*, who traded with the *French*. In that Country they have a large Copper Mine, ſo fine, that without ſmelting it, they make Copper of it by beating it betwixt two Stones. He ſaw a great deal of it, which their *Indians* got when they went to War againſt that Nation.

This Nation has a ſweet, humane Aſpect, but their Country is not good. They have no Beaver, but live by Fiſhing, and a kind of Deer they call *Cariboux*, (Rain-Deer.) The Hares grow white in Winter, and recover their Colour in Spring; they have very large Ears, and are always black. Their Skins in Winter are very pretty, of fine long Hair, which does not fall, ſo that they make very fine Muffs.

He ſays he can ſay nothing poſitive in going farther Northward, but only that their Savages reported, that in the Bottom of the Northern Bay, there is a Streight where they can eaſily diſcover Land on the other Side; they had never gone to the End of that Streight; they ſay there is Ice there all the Year, which is drove by the Wind ſometimes one Way, ſometimes another. According to all Appearance, this Arm of the Sea has a Communication with the Weſtern Ocean, and what makes it more probable, is, that when the Wind comes from the Northern Quarter, the Sea is diſcharged by that Streight in ſuch Abundance into *Hudſon*'s *Bay*, ſo as to raiſe the Water 10 Feet above the ordinary Tides; inſomuch as when they find the Waters riſe, Ships take Shelter againſt theſe Northerly Winds.

The Savages ſay, that after travelling ſome Months to the W. S. W. they came to the Sea, upon which they ſaw great Veſſels with Men who had Beards and Caps, who gather Gold on the Shore, that is at the Mouths of Rivers.

In paſſing to the Southward from the *Daniſh* River, at 60 Leagues Diſtance, is the River of *Bourbon*, or *Nelſon*, in Lat. 57°. there is nothing remarkable in the Country betwixt theſe two Ri-

vers, but a great Number of the Deer called *Cariboux*, which being drove from the Woods by a great Number of Muſketoes or Midges, come to the Shore to refreſh themſelves; they are in Hoards of 10000 together, and ſpread through a Country 40 or 50 Leagues in Extent; they might have as many of their Skins as they pleaſed, and ſome have been dreſſed, which have been very fine.

They have there alſo all Sorts of Wild-fowl, as Swans, Buſtards, Geeſe, Cranes, Ducks, and thoſe of the ſmaller Kind, in ſuch great Numbers, that when they riſe they darken the Sky, and make ſo much Noiſe, that they can ſcarce hear each other ſpeak. He ſays that may appear fabulous, but affirms he ſays nothing but what he ſaw himſelf; for he would not truſt to the Report of others, but went himſelf to almoſt every Place he mentions.

The River St. *Thereſa*, upon which they built Fort *Bourbon*, is a Branch of *Nelſon* River, by which the Natives come down to trade. This River is of ſo great Extent, that it paſſes thro' many great Lakes; the firſt is 150 Leagues from the Entrance of the River, and is 100 Leagues in Circuit: The Natives call it the Lake of *Forts* (or rather *Foreſts*). On the North Side a River diſcharges itſelf, called the *Rapid River*; this takes its Riſe from a Lake 300 Leagues from the firſt, which they call *Michinipi*, or the *great Water*, becauſe in Effect it is the greateſt and deepeſt Lake, being 600 Leagues in Circumference, and receives into it many Rivers, ſome of which have a Communication with the *Daniſh* River, and others with the *Plaſcotez de Chiens*. About this Lake, and along theſe Rivers, are great Numbers of *Indians*, who call themſelves the Nation of the great Water, or of *Aſſinibouels*; it is to be remarked that theſe are as humane and affable, as the *Eſkimaux* are fierce and barbarous, as are alſo all the other Nations along *Hudſon's Bay*. At the Extremity of the Lake of *Foreſts*, the River *Bourbon* continues its Courſe, and comes from another Lake, called, *the Junction of the two Seas*, becauſe the Land almoſt meets in the middle of the Lake. The Eaſt Side of this Lake is a Country full of thick Foreſts, in which are great Numbers of Beaver and Elks. Here begins the Country of the *Chriſtinaux*. This is in a much more temperate Climate; the Weſt Side is full of fine Meadows, filled with wild Oxen; the *Aſſinibouels* live here. The Lake is 400 Leagues in Circumference, and

200 from the other Lake. A hundred Leagues further W. S. W. along this River, is another Lake they call *Ounipigouchih*, or the *Little Sea*. It is almoſt the ſame Country and Climate with the other, inhabited by the ſame *Indians*, the *Aſſinibouels*, the *Chriſtinaux*, and *Sauteurs*, it is 300 Leagues in Circumference; at the further End is a River which comes from *Tacamiouen*, which is not ſo great as the other; it is into this Lake that the River of *Stags* is diſcharged, which is of ſuch a Length that the Natives have not yet diſcovered its Source.

From this River they can go to another which runs Weſtward, but all the reſt run either into the Bay, or River of *Canada*. He endeavoured to ſend the Natives to diſcover if it went to the Weſtern Sea; but their Enemies lying in their Way prevented them; however they brought ſome of them Priſoners, who ſaid they alſo were at War with another Nation farther Weſt; theſe ſaid they had Neighbours with Beards, who liv'd in Stone Houſes and Forts; that they were not cloathed like them; that they had white Kettles, and ſhewing them a Silver Cup, they ſaid it was of that Mettal; they ſaid they tilled their Land with Tools of that Mettal; according to their Deſcription, it was Maize they cultivated.

The Intendant of *Canada* wanted to diſcover theſe Countries from thence; but it is much eaſier from Fort *Bourbon*, as it is ſhorter, and through a fine Country, full of Beaſts and wild Fowl, beſides Fruit which grow wild, as Plumbs, Apples and Grapes, and a great Variety of ſmaller Fruit.

On the South-weſt Side of this Lake *Tacamiouen*, is a River which comes from another, called *the Lake of Dogs*, which is not far from the ſuperior Lake.

The River *St. Thereſa* is but half a League wide where the Fort is built. Two Leagues higher is Fort *Philipeaux*, built for a Retreat; there the River begins to be interſperſed with Iſlands. Twenty Leagues above the Fort the River divides into two Branches, one which comes from the North-weſt Side, communicates with *Nelſon* or *Bourbon* River, by which the Natives come down to trade, by the Means of a Land Carriage from the Lake of *Foreſts* to this River. Twenty Leagues above the firſt Fork there is another, that comes from the South-eaſt, which the Natives call *Guichematouang*, or the great Fork. This has a Communication with the

River

River *St. Huiles*; the Weſtern Branch, tho' ſtill called *St. Thereſa*, is but of ſmall Extent, coming from its Source by ſeveral ſmall Brooks, in each of which are great Numbers of Lynx, Beavers, Martins, and others of ſmaller Furs. Betwixt the two Forts is a ſmall River called *Egaree*, from whence they get their Wood for firing, it being ſcarce at the Fort. Near the Mouth of the River is another ſmall one they call *Gargouſſe*; there comes in at high Water a great Number of Porpoiſes; the River being narrow here. There might be a good Fiſhing, where they might make above 600 Barrels of Oil annually.

From this River to *St. Huiles*, or *New Severn*, is 100 Leagues S. E. It is ſituated in Lat. 56°. The Entrance is but ſhallow, only capable of Veſſels of 60 Tons. Here might be made good Houſes, for Wood is very plenty here, and there are great Numbers of Beavers higher up the River.

As to the Climate at Fort *Bourbon*, it being in Lat. 57°. it is very cold in Winter, which begins about *Michaelmas*, and ends in *May*. The Sun ſets about 3, and riſes about 9 in the Winter. When the Days grow a little longer, and the Cold is more temperate, the Sportſmen kill as many Partridges and Hares as they pleaſe. One Year, when they had eighty Men in Gariſon, they had the Curioſity to reckon the Number, which amounted to 90,000 Partridges, and 25,000 Hares.

At the End of *April*, the Geeſe, Buſtards, and Ducks, return in ſuch Numbers, that they kill as many as they pleaſe; they alſo take great Numbers of Cariboux or Rain-Deer. In *March* and *April* they come from the North to the South, and extend then along the River 60 Leagues; they go again Northward in *July* and *Auguſt*; the Roads they make in the Snow are as well padded, and croſs each other as often as the Streets in *Paris*; the Natives make Hedges with Branches of Trees, and leave Openings in which they fix Snares, and thus take Numbers of them. When they ſwim the Rivers in returning Northwards, the Natives kill them in Canoes with Lances, as many as they pleaſe. In Summer they have the Pleaſure of Fiſhing, and with Nets take Pike, Trout and Carp, and a white Fiſh ſomething like a Herring, by much the beſt Fiſh in the World; they preſerve thoſe for their Winter Proviſion, by putting them in Snow, or freezing them, as alſo the Fleſh they would preſerve: They keep thus alſo Geeſe, Ducks,

and Buftards, which they roaft with the Hares and Partridges they kill in Winter; fo that tho' it be a cold Climate, there is good Living there, by getting Bread and Wine from *Europe*. Tho' the Summer be fhort, they had a Garden and good Coleworts, with Sallads and fmall Herbs, which they had in their Soups in Winter. He had 120,000 Livres Profit out of 8000 fent him in Goods in one Seafon; they have alfo Bears, Elks, and all Sorts of Beafts whofe Skins and Furs are valued in *France*; and according to him it is one of the moft profitable Pofts in *North America*, confidering the Expence. This is an Extract of fo much as is material out of *Monfieur Jeremie*'s Letter, defcribing the Climate and Countries adjoining to Fort *Bourbon*. To this I will give an Abftract of what *de la Poterie* mentions in relation to that River, and the Nations and Countries adjoining to it.

He fays the *Ouinebigonhelinis* inhabit on the Sea-coaft. The *Poaourinagou*, or River *Bourbon* is a League wide, inhabited by the *Mifkogonhirinis*, or *Savanna Indians*, who make War with the *Hakouchirmiou*. Five Leagues within it, are two Iflands of a League in Circuit each, where there are large Trees; this River is but five Leagues from *St. Therefa* by Land, and feven by Water; here is a flat Coaft for 100 Leagues; a League without the Mouth of the River is a Pool betwixt two Banks, in which is 18 Foot at low Water, and five Fathoms at high Water, 200 Fathom over, and 600 in Length, where Ships may ly at Anchor. A League within the River on the Star-board Side is Fort *Nelfon*. This River takes its Source from a great Lake called *Michinipi*, where is the true Nation of the *Cris*, or *Chriftinaux*; from whence there is a Communication with the *Affinibouels*, tho' far from each other; the River *Mathifipi*, called *Leogane*, empties itfelf on the Larboard Side near its Mouth; and about a League higher over againft the Fort is *Matchifipi*, called *Gargouffe*; by thefe two Rivers the Savages come to the Fort of *New Savanne*, by the great River they call *Kouachoue*. Twelve Leagues above the Fort is the River *Oujuragatchoufibi*, and two Leagues higher is the River *Apithfibi*, called the River *Pierre*, or *Fleches*, which is the Way by which the Savages come to a great Lake called *Namoufaki*, or the River of Sturgeons, where the *Nakonkirhirinous* refide.

Twenty

Twenty Leagues above *Apithſibi* is *Kechematouamis*, called the *Great Fork*, by which they go to *Kichichouane* or *Albany River*, in the Bottom of the Bay.

The Country about Fort *Nelſon* is very low, it is filled with Woods of ſmall Trees, and is very marſhy. The Natives live by Hunting and Fiſhing; Seals abound there, which are larger than thoſe of *Canada*; they ſell the Oil extracted from them at the Fort, which is better and clearer than Nut Oil. They have Buſtards and wild Geeſe in great Numbers, and ſell the Feathers at the Fort. The white Partridges are as large as Capons. They have white Foxes and Martin Zebelins fairer than thoſe in *Muſcovy*.

The *Monſonis* or Nation of the Marſhes live higher up, than the *Ouenebegonhelinis*, in a Country full of Marſhes. As they have a great many ſmall Rivers and Brooks, which fall into great Rivers, theſe People kill a great many Beavers; they find ſome very black, a Quality rare enough; for they are commonly of a reddiſh Colour. Theſe would have prevented the Nations at a greater Diſtance from trading with the *Engliſh*; but they obliged them to give them a Paſſage if they would enjoy any Commerce themſelves.

The *Savanna Indians* are more to the Southward; they have Savannas, Meadows, and fine Hills in their Country. There the Elks, Roe-Bucks, Rain-Deer, and Squinaton, have Place to range in. The Squinaton reſembles a Roe-Buck; it is higher, has finer Legs, and the Head longer and ſharper.

The *Cris*, or *Chriſtinaux*, that is Savages who dwell upon the Lakes, are 160 Leagues higher; they uſe the Calumet of Peace; they are a numerous Nation, and extend over a vaſt Country, as far as the upper Lake, and trade ſometimes at *Miſſilimakinac*. They are lively, always in Action, dancing and ſinging; they are at the ſame time Warriors, and very like to the Manners of the *Gaſcoyns*.

The *Migichihilinious*, that is *Eagle ey'd Indians*, are at 200 Leagues Diſtance; the *Aſſinibouels* inhabit the Weſt and the North; they are reputed to be the ſame Nation, becauſe of the great Affinity of their Language. The Name ſignifies Men of the *Rock*. They uſe the Calumet, and live at 250 Leagues Diſtance. They paint their Bodies, are grave, and have much Phlegm, like the *Flemings*.

The

The *Osquisakamais* live upon Fish; they kill but few Beavers, but their Coat Beaver is the best from their greasy Way of living, and cleaning their Hands upon them.

The *Michinipicpoets*, or Men of Stone of the great Lake, are at 300 Leagues Distance; they live North and South.

The *Netouatsimipoets*, or Men of the Point, are distant 400 Leagues.

The *Attimospiquay* which signifies the Coast of Dogs; they have yet had no Commerce with the *French*, because they dare not pass the Lands of the *Maskigonehirinis*, with whom they have War; here is the Musk Ox, whose Hair is as fine as the Beavers, which is fit for Hats; their Horns turn round like Rams Horns; they learn from these People, that there is a Strait, at the End of which is an Icy Sea, which has a Communication with the South Seas.

These Nations, who come from a great Distance, assemble in *May* at a great Lake, sometimes 12 or 1500 together, to begin their Voyage. The Chiefs represent their Wants, and engage the young Men to prepare and get Beavers, and each Family makes a Feast, and fix upon a certain Number to go together, and they renew Alliances with each other; then Joy, Pleasure, and good Cheer reigns, in which Time they make their Canoes, which are of Birch Bark; the Trees are much larger than those in *France*; they make the Floor-timbers of little Pieces of white Wood, four Inches thick; they bind them at the Top to Pieces an Inch thick, which keeps the Bark open above, and sew up the two Ends; these are so swift as to go 30 Leagues in a Day with the Stream; they carry them easily on their Backs, and are very light in the Water; they have no Seats, and they must paddle either sitting in the Bottom, or upon their Knees; when they are ready for their Voyage they choose several Chiefs; the Number that trade annually are not certain, according as they happen to have War or not, which affects their Hunting; but there comes down generally to Port *Nelson* 1000 Men, some Women, and about 600 Canoes.

There are eight Kinds of Beavers received at the Farmer's Office.

The first is the fat Winter Beaver, kill'd in Winter, which is worth 5 *s.* 6 *d. per* Pound.

The ſecond is the fat Summer Beaver killed in Summer, and is worth 2 *s.* 9 *d.*

The third the dry Winter Beaver, and fourth the Bordeau, is much the ſame, and are worth 3 *s.* 6 *d.*

The fifth the dry Summer Beaver is worth very little, about 1 *s.* 9 *d. per* Pound.

The ſixth is the Coat Beaver, which is worn till it is half greaſed, and is worth 4 *s.* 6 *d. per* Pound.

The 7th the *Muſcovite* dry Beaver, of a fine Skin, covered over with a ſilky Hair; they wear it in *Ruſſia*, and comb away all the ſhort Down, which they make into Stuffs and other Works, leaving nothing but the ſilky Hair; this is worth 4 *s.* 6 *d. per Pound.*

The eight is the Mittain Beaver, cut out for that Purpoſe to make Mittains, to preſerve them from the Cold, and are greaſed by being uſed, and are worth 1 *s.* 9 *d. per* Pound.

Before I mention the Account given by *Joſeph la France*, the *French Canadeſe Indian*, whoſe Father, he ſays, was a *Frenchman*, and his Mother an *Indian* of the Nation of the *Santeurs*, who reſide at the Fall of *St. Mary*, between the Upper Lake and Lake of *Hurons*; I ſhall mention the State of the *Engliſh* and *French* Trade at preſent upon theſe *Canada* Lakes.

Mr. *Burnet*, when he was appointed Governor of *New-York* in 1727, finding that the *French* in *Canada* were in Poſſeſſion of all the *Indian* Fur Trade, through all the Countries adjoining to the *Canadeſe* Lakes, except what Trade the *Engliſh* carried on with the ſix *Iroqueſe* Nations, (the *Tuſkeruro* Nation now united to the others, making the 6th Tribe) and knowing that the chief Support of the Colony at *Canada* was the Benefit they made by their *Indian* Fur Trade, thought it of great Moment to gain that Trade to our Colony of *New-York* from the *French*; upon enquiring into the Nature of that Trade, and Manner of carrying it on, he found, that the *French* at *Quebec* and *Monreal*, were chiefly ſupplied with *European* Goods from the Merchants at *New-York*, where they had them upon much eaſier Terms than they could have them from *France*; by which he found we could trade upon much better Terms directly with the *Indians*, than with the *French*, and would by that Means make all the *Indians* our Friends; and conſequently by our giving them our Goods cheaper at the firſt Hand, we might gain moſt of that Trade from the *French*, and by

by that Means weaken their Colony at *Canada*, whoſe chief Support is from that Trade; accordingly, he prohibited the Trade from *New-York* to *Canada*, by an Act he got paſs'd in the Aſſembly there; and being oppos'd in it by the Merchants trading to *Quebec*, who appeal'd againſt it to the Council in *England*, at laſt got the Act confirmed by the Council; by this Means a Trade was open'd directly with the Weſtern *Indians* through the *Iroqueſe* Country, and an Intercourſe and Familiarity of Conſequence, betwixt all theſe Nations and our Colonies; the Aſſembly was at the Expence to build and fortify a trading Houſe at *Oſwega*, on the *Cadarakui* or *Frontenac* Lake, in the Neighbourhood of the *Iroqueſe*, near the *Onontagues*, and have from that Time maintain'd a Gariſon there; by this Means they have gained a conſiderable Part of the Trade which the *French* formerly had with the Weſtern *Indians*, and all the Allies of the *Iroqueſe* now trade with us, as well as thoſe on the *Illeneſe* Lake, *Miſſilimakinae*, and *Saut St. Mary*. Before that Time a very inconſiderable Number were employed in that Trade; now above 300 are employed at the Trading Houſe at *Oſwega* alone, and the *Indian* Trade ſince that Time has ſo much increaſed, that ſeveral *Indian* Nations come now each Year to trade there, whoſe Names before were not ſo much as known to the *Engliſh*.

The ſeveral *Indian* Nations who are now in Alliance with the ſix Nations, and trade with us according to the Information given to *Conrad Weaſer* Eſq; in open Council at *Turpehawkie*, at their Return from the *Indian* Treaty at *Philadelphia* in *July* 1742, are,

1. A Nation of *Indians* living on the Weſt Side of the Lake *Errie*, and along the Straits to *Huron* Lake, and the South Side of *Huron* Lake; they are called by the *Iroqueſe Unighkillyiakow*, conſiſting of about 30 Towns, each of about 200 fighting Men.

2. The ſecond live among the former called ----- conſiſting of four Towns of their own People, and 400 able Men all.

3. The third called by them *Iſhiſageck Roanu*, live on the Eaſt Side of the *Huron* Lake; ſeveral of the Council have been there, and they all agree they have three large Towns of 600, 800, and 1000 able Men.

4. The fourth, called *Twightwis Roanu*, live at the Head of *Huakiky* River, near the little Lakes.

5. The fifth, *Oſkiakikis*, living on a Branch of *Ohio*, that Heads near the Lake *Errie*, four large Towns of about 1000 Warriors.

6. The ſixth, *Oyachtownuk Roanu*, near Black River, conſiſts of four Towns, and 1000 Warriors.

7. The ſeventh, *Kighetawkigh Roanu*, upon the great River *Miſſiſſippi*, above the Mouth of *Ohio*, three Towns, the Number of People uncertain.

8. The eighth, *Kirhawguagh Roanu*, ſeveral Savage Nations as their Name ſignifies (the People of the Wilderneſs) they live on the North-ſide of the *Huron* Lake ; they neither plant Corn, nor any Thing elſe, but live altogether upon Fleſh, Roots and Herbs ; an infinite Number of People of late become Allies to the *Iroqueſe*.

The above Account was communicated by a Gentleman of good Underſtanding and Probity, and very well ſkill'd in the *Indian* Tongue and Manners, being himſelf adopted into one of their Tribes, and is their conſtant Interpreter at the *Philadelphia* Treaties, and the Account may be depended upon.

The *Iroqueſe* are now civilizing, and many of them become Chriſtians and Proteſtants, by the Care of Mr. *Barclay* now among them ; who among the *Mowhawks* has in great Meaſure ſuppreſſed their darling Vice Drunkenneſs, and has perſuaded them to marry, and not to divorce their Wives ; they are not now ſo cruel to their Enemies as formerly, and have in great Meaſure left off their Wars with their Neighbours, having entered into Alliances with them, and by that Means have brought their Fur Trade to *Oſwega* in their own Country, and thus the moſt material Points are gained towards civilizing and converting them to Chriſtianity. This Account is of laſt Summer 1742.

Oſwega is ſituated upon the Lake *Fronlenac*, about 20 Leagues below the Fall of *Niagara* ; the *Indian* Traders have two Ways of coming there, either by a ſhort Land Carriage betwixt two Rivers, which fall into *Huron* and *Frontenac* Lake, and ſo croſs that Lake to *Oſwega*, or by the Streight of St. *Joſeph*, betwixt *Huron* and *Errie* Lakes, and ſo to the Fall of *Niagara*, where they have one Land Carriage, and then go by Water to *Oſwega*. This is a much eaſier Voyage and Paſſage than to *Monreal*, and ſo to *Quebec*, there being above 36 Falls upon the River *Outaouas*, by which they paſs from *Huron* Lake to *Monreal* ; and if they ſhould go by the

the Lake *Frontenac* down the River St. *Laurence* to *Monreal*, which is 80 Leagues; above 60 Leagues of it is all Sharps and Waterfalls, which makes it both dangerous and tedious in returning from *Monreal*, and the *Engliſh* alſo afford their Goods better and cheaper than the *French*.

Joſeph la France is now about 36 Years old. He was born at *Miſſilimakinac*, and was 5 Years old when his Mother died. His Father then took him with him to *Quebec* to learn *French*, where he ſtaid the Winter, about 6 Months. He ſays, as well as he can remember, *Quebec* was about a League long, and Half a League broad, and had 4 or 5000 Men in Garriſon, it being about the Time of the Peace of *Utrecht*. He returned from thence with his Father, and lived with him until his Death, which happened when he was 14 Years old. After his Death, when he was about 16, he went down to *Monreal*, to ſell what Furs and Peltry his Father had left him, and then returned to *Miſſilimakinac*, where he traded and hunted in the neighbouring Countries until he was 27 Years old; in which Time he went one Year to *Miſſiſſippi*. He went by the *Illineſe* Lake, which he calls *Michigon*. At the Bottom of the Lake there was a *French* Fort, in which there were 15 *French* in Garriſon, about 11 Years ago. The River upon which it is built, he calls St. *Joſeph*, it is very rapid. He paſſed by *Ouiſconſic* to the *Miſſiſſippi*, and went down it as far as the River *Miſſouris*, and returned by the ſame Rout. In his Return he paſſed by the Bay of *L'Our qui Dort*, ſo called from a Heap of Sand upon a Point, which reſembles a Bear ſleeping. When he was 28 Years old, he went with a Parcel of Furs, with 8 *Iroqueſe*, in 2 Canoes, croſs the Lake of *Hurons*, by the Bay of *Sakinac*, to the Streights of *Errie*, which they paſſed in the Night for fear of being ſtopped by the *French*, who have a Village or little Fort there, in which he believes there may be 100 Houſes. He from thence paſſed thro' Lake *Errie* to the Fall of *Niagara*, and the *Iroqueſe* carried his Canoes and Furs down by the Fall to Lake *Frontenac*, for which he gave them 100 Beavers, and thence went to *Oſwega*, but was not within the Fort or Town, the *Iroqueſe* ſelling his Furs for him, and then returned by the ſame Way to *Miſſilimakinac*. He ſays the *French* have a Fort on the North Side of the Fall of *Niagara*, betwixt the Lakes *Errie* and *Frontenac*, about 3 Leagues within the Woods from the Fall, in which they keep 30 Soldiers, and have

about

about as many more with them as Servants and Aſſiſtants; theſe have a ſmall Trade with the *Indians* for Meat, Ammunition and Arms.

About 6 Years ago he went again to *Monreal* with two *Indians*, and a conſiderable Cargo of Furs, where he found the Governor of *Canada*, who wintered there. He made him a Preſent of Martins Skins, and alſo 1000 Crowns, for a Conge or Paſſport to have a Licence to trade next Year: But in Spring he would neither give him his Conge nor his Money, under Pretence that he had ſold Brandy to the *Indians*, which is prohibited, and threatened him with Impriſonment for demanding his Money; ſo that he was obliged to ſteal away with his two *Indians*, and what Goods he had got in Exchange for his Furs, with his 3 Canoes. *Monreal*, he ſays, is about 60 Leagues above *Quebec*. It is a large Town, about a League and a Half in Circuit within the Walls, which are 15 Feet high, of Lime and Stone. They have 300 Men in Garriſon. This is the only conſiderable Town in *Canada* beſides *Quebec*; for *Trois Rivieres* is but a Village. He ſays they have a Fort the Natives call *Catarakui* Fort, 80 Leagues above *Monreal*, near Lake *Frontenac*, in which they keep a Garriſon of 40 Men, as the *Indians* informed him, and about as many more Inhabitants. The River St. *Laurence*, from thence to *Monreal*, is ſo full of Water-falls, and ſo rapid, that there is the utmoſt Danger and Difficulty in going by Water, and no going ſo far by Land through the Woods, ſo that no Trade can be carried on that Way but at great Expence.

They have no other fortified Places in *Canada* but one Fort called *Champli*, near *Champlain* Lake, upon the *Engliſh* and *Iroqueſe* Frontiers, in which they have 20 Men in Garriſon.

He was above 40 Days in going up the River from *Monreal* to the Lake *Nepeſing*, which is at the Source of that River which he calls St. *Laurence*, and not the River which paſſes through the Lakes, but *La Hontan* calls it the River *Outaouas*. He had 36 Land Carriages before he got to *Nepiſing*. He was but 18 Days in going down it to *Monreal*. He ſays the River *Nepiſing* runs from the ſame Lake into the Lake of *Hurons*. This is what *La Hontan* calls *French* River; it is 20 Leagues in its Courſe, and had three Falls upon it, which they deſcended in two Days; and with a fair Wind they might go from thence to *Miſſilimakinac* in two Days

I more

more along the Iſlands. Upon his Return he exchanged his Goods for Furs, and reſolved to try his Fortune once more to *Monreal*, and make his Peace with the Governor. He ſays, when he left *Miſſilimakinac*, there were but 2 Men with the Governor in Garriſon, which was only to open and ſhut the Gates. He ſays, that of late the Trade from thence to *Monreal* is ſo much leſſened upon account of the *Engliſh* ſupplying the *Indians* much cheaper and better, by an eaſy Navigation through the Lakes to *Niagara*, that there does not go above 12 Canoes in a Year, and thoſe Licences are generally given to ſuperannuated Officers; the Avarice and Injuſtice of the Governor of *Canada* has likewiſe diſguſted the Natives.

After having got a Parcel of Furs, he, with two *Indian* Slaves, and 3 Canoes, paſſed the Lake *Huron*, and enter'd the River *Nepiſing*, and went up it ſeveral Leagues; but at a Turn in the River he met 9 Canoes, in which was the Governor's Brother-in-law, with 30 Soldiers, and as many more to manage the Canoes, who ſeized him and his Furs, and Slaves, as a Runaway without a Paſſport, and would have carried him away to *Monreal*, but he made his Eſcape into the Woods in the Night, with only his Gun and five Charges of Powder and Ball, and paſſed by Land alone through the Woods on the North Side of *Huron* Lake, until he met with ſome of the *Miſſada Indians*, who live there, having been ſix Weeks in his Journey, travelling behind the Mountains, on the North Side of the Lake, in a marſhy Country, abounding with Beavers, and thus returned to *Saut St. Marie*; and having loſt all, determined to go to the *Engliſh* in *Hudſon*'s *Bay*, by paſſing through the *Indian* Nations Weſt of the upper Lake, until he ſhould arrive, by theſe Lakes and Rivers which run Northwards, at *York* Fort, on *Nelſon* River.

He ſet out in the Beginning of Winter 1739 upon this Journey and Voyage, and hunted and lived with the *Indians* his Relations the *Sauteurs*, on the North Side of the upper Lake, where he was well acquainted, having hunted and traded thereabouts for fourteen Years. He ſays the upper Lake has three Iſlands near the North Shore, about 3 Leagues from the Shore; they are about 3 or 4 Leagues each in Circumference. One of them he calls *Iſle du Lignon*; they are full of fine Woods, as is all the North Coaſt, which

is

is very mountainous, but the Country is very fine to the Northward of the high Land.

The Upper Lake falls into the Lake of *Hurons* by the Falls of *St. Mary*, which is a Rapid Current of ſeveral Leagues. From that Fall to the River *Michipikoton* on the North Side of the Lake, is 60 Leagues; that River is navigable Northward for 20 Leagues, being 3 Fathoms deep and without Cataracts; it runs through a Valley betwixt the Mountains, which is about three Leagues wide, full of fine Woods; and then there is a Fork where two Branches meet, and on each Side, at a conſiderable Diſtance, are two round Hills detached from the others, which they call *Le deux Mamelles*, or two Paps; theſe two Branches come from their ſeveral Sources, after running about eight Leagues, through a Country abounding in Beavers. There are two *Indian* Nations upon this North Coaſt, the *Epinette* Nation are upon the Eaſt Side of that River, and the *Ouaſſi* upon the Weſt Side, both Tribes of the *Sauteurs*.

About 100 Leagues farther Weſt is another River, which runs from the North-weſt into this Lake, which he calls the River *du Pique* from a ſharp Rock at the Mouth of the River, formed like a Pike or Halbert, it is only navigable for about three Leagues to a Fall, above which is a Lake about ſix Leagues long, which comes from a marſhy Country full of Beavers; on the Weſt Side of this River, and of the Upper Lake, is a Range of Mountains full of Woods, and a River full of Cataracts deſcends from them, and enters into the River *du Pique*, a little before it paſſes into the Lake; among theſe Mountains are ſeveral rich Mines; he ſaw ſome very good Lead and Copper Oar, which the Natives brought down from theſe Mountains. On the South-weſt Side of the Lake, under theſe Mountains, is a flat Country, full of Woods and Beavers, but the South and South-eaſt Side is a ſandy, low, dry Country, without Wood. He ſtaid Part of the Winter with the *Indians* at *Michipikoton*, and in the Month of *March* got to the River *Du Pique*, which he paſſed on the Ice, it being not then thawed. He ſays there are many Beavers alſo among the Mountains, Southward of that River, they having great Flats above, and among the Mountains, where they make their Dams and Ponds. The Ice was quite gone on the South-weſt Side of the Lake by the 15th of *April* N. S. He ſays the Lake is never frozen at any Diſtance from the Shore, only in little Bays, where

it ſometimes is frozen, and breaks off, and is carried out and in with the Wind.

On the ſandy Coaſt on the South-eaſt Side of the Lake, there is nothing but Shrubs not above ſix Feet high; but at ſome Diſtance from the Coaſt there are fine Meadows and Paſture, full of Elks, Stags, Deer, Goats, wild Beeves, *&c.* interſperſed with Woods; and the *Indian* Nations in the neighbouring Countries remove thither in the Summer Seaſon to hunt and feed upon them.

On the South-weſt Side of the Lake, betwixt the woody and Champaign ſandy Country, there is a Land Carriage of 3 Leagues, and they came to a Marſh or Bog about a League long, and five Furlongs over, and from thence another Land Carriage of nine Leagues to the River *Du Pluis*, which, after a Courſe of fifteen Leagues, falls into the Lake *Du Pluis.* He was from the Beginning to the 18th of *April* 1740 in getting to this River; there he, and the *Indians* with him, got fine Birch Trees of a great Size to make their Canoes. The River they embark'd upon was about three Furlongs broad, but was not deep, and had no Waterfalls; the Courſe was South-weſt. The *Indians* who are on the Weſt Side of that River are called *Monſoni* or *Moſonique*, or *Gens de Orignal.* The Lake *Du Pluis* is 100 Leagues in Length, and is ſo called from a perpendicular Water-fall, by which the Water falls into a a River South-weſt of it, which raiſes a Miſt-like Rain. He was 15 Days in paſſing down this River to the Lake *Du Pluis* in his Canoe; he coaſted along the North-weſt Side of the Lake, which was full of fine Woods, but there was none on the South-eaſt Side, as the Natives informed him, except near the Edge of the Lake, for about Half the Length of the Lake, at which Place a River enters it from the South Side, which comes from a low Country, full of Beavers. The *French*, upon account of theſe Land Carriages, never paſs into theſe Countries adjoining to this Lake.

He paſſed the Lake *Du Pluis* in the latter End of *April*, and Beginning of *May*, and ſtaid 10 Days at the Fall with the *Monſoni*, where they fiſh with Nets at the Bottom of the Fall. They have two great Villages, one on the North Side, and the other on the South Side of the Fall.

The River *Du Pluis*, which falls from the Lake, is a fine large River, which runs Weſtward, and is about 3 Furlongs in Breadth; its Courſe is about 60 Leagues before it falls into the Lake *Du Bois*, or *Des Iſles*, and is free from Cataracts, having only two ſharp Streams. He was 10 Days in going down it in his Canoe; the whole Country along its Banks is full of fine Woods, in which are great Variety of Wild-fowl and Beaſts, as wild Beaver, Stags, Elk, Deer, *&c.* and the River and adjoining Lakes full of excellent Fiſh. This River falls into the Lake *Du Bois*, where he arrived about the End of *May*. This Lake is very large, and filled with fine Iſlands; he was 30 Days in paſſing it, fiſhing and hunting as he went with the Natives, and ſtaid a Month in one of the Iſlands with the *Monſoni* and *Sturgeon Indians*, who live on the North Side of this Lake, and meet in that Iſland to be merry and confirm their Friendſhip and Alliance; theſe laſt are called ſo from the great Number of Sturgeons they take in this Lake, which is the greateſt Part of their Proviſions. He ſtaid there until the Month of *Auguſt*; all theſe Iſlands and Coaſts are low, and full of fine Woods, where all kind of Fowl breed. At the Weſt End of this Lake, which is much longer than the Lake *Du Pluis*, a great River enters it near the Place where the great *Ouinipique* River paſſes out of it, and runs into the Lake of the ſame Name. This River has a long Courſe from the Southward. On the South-weſt of this Lake is the Nation of the *Sieux Indians*. The River *Ouinipique* is as large as the River *Du Pluis*, but is much more rapid, having about 30 Falls or Sharps upon it, where they muſt carry their Canoes. Two or three of them are Carriages of a League or two, the others are very ſhort. Upon that Account he was 15 Days in going down the River, which runs North-weſt about 100 Leagues. It alſo runs through a fine woody Country, having many Sorts of Timber Trees of great Bulk. On the South-weſt Side, at ſome Diſtance, is a flat Country, full of Meadows; at the Falls it is about a Furlong in Breadth, in other Places three or four. He arrived at the great *Ouinipique* Lake in *September*; he was about 30 Days in paſſing it, ſhooting and fiſhing as he went. After going half way through it, he joined the *Cris* or *Chriſtinaux Indians*, who live on the North-eaſt Side, and went on Shore, and hunted Beavers all the Autumn. He ſaw but two Iſles in it; one was full of Wood, it was about 3 Leagues long and 2 broad. He

I called

called it the *Isle Du Biche*, or *of Hinds*, there being several upon it; the other was sandy, and without Wood, full of Geese and other Water-fowl, which breed there; he called it *Goose Isle*, but the Natives called it *Sandy Isle*.

On the West Side of this Lake the *Indians* told him a River enter'd it, which was navigable with Canoes; it descended from *Lac Rougeor*, the *Red Lake*, called so from the Colour of the Sand; they said there were two other Rivers run out of that Lake, one into the *Mississippi*, and the other Westward, into a marshy Country, full of Beavers.

The Country West of the *Ouinipique* Lake has dry Islands or Hills with marshy Bottoms, full of Wood and Meadows. On the East Side is a fine flat Country, full of Woods, until they come to the Bottom of the Mountains, which are betwixt this and the upper Lake. On a Lake on that Side, betwixt this Lake and Lake *Du Bois*, are the *Migechichilinious*, or Eagle-eyed *Indians*; these, he says, are not called so from their having a sharp Sight, but upon account of many Eagles which breed in Islands in that Lake.

Upon the West Side of Lake *Ouinipique* are the Nation of the *Assinibouels* of the Meadows, and farther North a great Way, are the *Assinibouels* of the Woods. To the Southward of these are the Nation of *Beaux Hommes*, situated betwixt them and the *Sieux Indians*. The *Indians* on the East Side are the *Christinaux*, whose Tribes go as far North on that Side as the *Assinibouels* do on the other. All these Nations go naked in Summer, and paint or stain their Bodies with different Figures, anointing themselves with Grease of Deer, Beavers, Bears, *&c.* which prevents the Muskitoes, Serpents, or other Vermin, from biting them, they having an Antipathy to all Oils.

The great *Ouinipique* Lake was frozen over in Winter; it is no where 10 Leagues wide, and in some Places not above a League and a Half wide; the Winter there was not severe, it lasted about 3 Months and a Half, the Frost breaking up there in *March*.

This Lake is discharged into the little *Ouinipique* by a River he calls the *Red River*, or *little Ouinipique*, after a Course Northwards of about 60 Leagues.

This River runs through the like woody Country as the others; but the West Side is more temperate than the East, upon account

of the Mountains to Eaſtward of it; from whence a River deſcends into it through a marſhy Country, full of Beavers.

He made his Canoe in the Spring, at the North End of this Lake, and went down to the little *Ouinipique* in the Beginning of Summer; this laſt Lake is about 35 Leagues long, and 6 broad; there is but one little Iſland in it, almoſt upon a Water Level, the *Indians* call it *Mini Sabique.*

The Courſe of this Lake is from South to North, through a woody, low Country. In all theſe Countries are many Kinds of wild Fruit, as Cherries, Plumbs, Strawberries, Nuts, Walnuts, *&c.* The Winters here are from 3 to 4 Months, according as they happen to be more or leſs ſevere. He paſſed this Lake, and the River which runs into the Lake *Du Siens,* in Summer and Autumn; this is about 100 Leagues from the other. He ſays there is a Fork in this River *Du Siens,* by which one Branch diſcharges itſelf more Weſterly, and runs into the Country, where is the Nation of *Vieux Hommes*; this Nation is not called ſo from the Age of the Inhabitants, but from a Number of old Men, who ſeparated from ſome others, under a Chief or Leader of their own; and from that time they were called ſo. On the Eaſt-Side there enters a rapid River from the Mountains, full of Falls, upon which the Nation *Du Cris Panis Blanc* inhabit, who are ſtill a Tribe of the *Chriſtinaux.*

The Lake *Du Siens* is but ſmall, being not above 3 Leagues in Circuit; but all around its Banks, in the ſhallow Water and Marſhes, grows a kind of wild Oat, of the Nature of Rice; the outward Huſk is black, but the Grain within is white and clear like Rice; this the *Indians* beat off into their Canoes, and uſe it for Food.

All the Country adjoining this River is alſo full of Beavers. Here the Winter overtook him, and he was obliged to part with his Canoe, and travelled and hunted through that Country for ſix Months, in which Time he paſſed Northwards near 100 Leagues, but would have been much more, had he followed the Courſe of the River in Summer in his Canoe. He got to the Lake *Cariboux* in the Beginning of *March* 1742: This Lake is about 10 Leagues long, and 5 broad; the Ice was beginning to thaw when he came there; a Tribe of the *Chriſtinaux* live on the Eaſt of this Lake, and the *Aſſinibouels* of the Woods on the Weſt Side. The River

Cariboux runs out of this Lake Northwards for about 15 Leagues, and then it ſpreads, and is waſted in a marſhy Country, where there is no paſſing by Water, nor by Land in Summer; the Ice being then breaking up, he was obliged to go about 15 Leagues Eaſtward, to avoid the Bogs, before he could reach the Lake *Pachegoia*, into which the River *Cariboux* deſcends through the Marſhes.

Pachegoia is the Lake where all the *Indians* aſſemble in the latter End of *March* every Year, to cut the Birch Trees and make their Canoes of the Bark, which then begins to run, in order to paſs down the River to *York* Fort on *Nelſon* River with their Furs; it is divided ſo as to make almoſt two Lakes; the Weſt Side by which he paſs'd was about 100 Leagues in Circuit; the other Side or Eaſtern Lake was much larger, as the *Indians* informed him. The River *De vieux Hommes* runs from the Weſt for about 200 Leagues, and falls into this Lake, near the Place the River *Caribaux* enters it; it has a ſtrong Current and is always muddy, but there are no Falls upon it; theſe go generally down the River *Manoutiſibi* or *Churchill* River, and trade there, having either a Paſſage or ſhort Land Carriage to that River. The Lake *Pachegoia* was ſurrounded with fine Woods of Oak, Cedar, Pine, Poplar, Birch, *&c.* He arrived there the latter End of *March*, and he, with the other *Indians*, cut the Bark for their Canoes, and then hunted for ſome Time for Proviſions; they begun to make their Canoes the firſt of *April* N. S. which they finiſhed in three Days; on the 4th, he being appointed one of their Leaders, ſet out with 100 Canoes in Company, for the Factory at *York* Fort; there are generally two *Indians* in a Canoe, but he was alone in his; they were three Weeks in paſſing along the Weſt Side of the Lake before they came to the Place it is diſcharged by the River *Savanne* or *Epinette*; for they were obliged to coaſt the Weſt Side of the Lake in their little Canoes, and keep along the Bottom of each Bay; for theſe ſmall Canoes can bear no Surge or Waves when the Wind blows, and when they came to any Point on the Lake, if there was any Wind, they were obliged to carry their Furs and Canoes over the Land to the next Bay, which, with hunting for Proviſions delayed them greatly; at that Time they had neither Ice on the Lake nor Snow on the Land. In the Beginning of *May* N. S. he enter'd the River *Savanne*, but did not reach the

great

great Fork where the River divides, until the Beginning of *June*; for the *Indians*, what with hunting for Provifions, and from their Lazinefs, who would not ftir or exercife in the Heat of the Day, it being then very warm, and the Trees all fully blown; and from fome Land Carriages upon the Sharps and Falls, did not go above two or three Leagues in a Day. The River was fmall where it came out of the Lake for about fix Leagues, it fpreading through feveral little Paffages through the Marfhes, but farther down, when collected together, formed a large River; it was then quite free of Ice, they had a brifk Current, and feveral Sharps, but had but one Carriage of 100 Yards; it is about 80 or 90 Leagues from the Lake to the Fork. The Land at fome Diftance from the River was dry and hilly, and full of fine Trees of great Bulk and Heighth, as Fir, Pine, Spruce, Afh, Elm, Birch, Cedar, Alder, *&c.* The Banks were low, until they got to the great Fork, where the River is divided by a Rock upon which a convenient Fort might be built, which might be cut off by bringing the Water around it. It is about 60 Leagues from this Fork to the Factory; they ftay'd here eight Days to hunt for Provifions; there not being plenty of Game upon the Eaft Branch, which is the Way he went down, it being the fhorteft Paffage; at the fame time another Fleet of 100 Canoes went down the Weftern Branch; it was the 29th of *June* N. S. when he got to the Factory, and the other Party who went down the other Branch, were three Weeks later. From this Fork to within four or five Leagues of the Fort, the Banks are high, and of red Earth, from which he calls the River from the Fork, the River *de Terre rouge*; and from that Place they defcend gradually to the Sea, until they are near a Water Level; the Current was very eafy from the Fork to the Fort, the Ifland to Weftward of their Channel was full of Wood, but the Country above and beyond the other Bank, was not fo woody. They were about three Weeks in going from the Fork to the Factory; for the *Indians* told him, notwithftanding it was fo warm and pleafant in paffing down the River, and the Trees fully blown, that when they would come near the Sea, they would find it very cold with Snow and Ice in the River, and the Trees but juft beginning to bud; and accordingly they delayed going down fo foon as they otherwife might, or they could have gone down in four or five Days; this he could not eafily believe, confidering how forward the

the Spring was there, and the Weather ſo warm; but when he came within four or five Leagues of the Fort where the Land began to ſlope towards the Sea, he then found a great deal of Ice in the River, and the Trees but juſt budding, and when he got to the Fort, the Snow fell in one Night three or four Inches thick, but all above, along the River, the Climate and Seaſon was warm, and the Trees all in high Bloom.

Two Days after he got to *York* Fort, one of the *Monſoni Indians* arrived there with his Wife; he had four Packs of Beavers of 40 each; he told him he came by the River and Lake *Du Pique*, and was two Years hunting from thence before he got to the Fort; that he had about ſixty Land Carriages, paſſing from Lake to Lake, having no Rivers running the Courſe he came, except one which he paſſed down for two Days; he came to one very great Lake, in which he could diſcover no Land on either Side, but paſſed along it from Iſland to Iſland, which took him up a conſiderable Time.

The *Indians* being obliged to go aſhore every Day to hunt for Proviſions, delays them very much in their Voyages; for their Canoes are ſo ſmall, holding only two Men and a Pack of 100 Beavers Skins, that they can't carry Proviſions with them for any Time; if they had larger Canoes they could make their Voyages ſhorter, and carry many more Beavers to Market, at leaſt four times as many, beſides other Skins of Value, which are too heavy for their preſent Canoes; this, and the high Price ſet upon the *European* Goods by the Company in Exchange, diſcourages the Natives ſo much, that if it were not that they are under a Neceſſity of having Guns, Powder and Shot, Hatchets, and other Iron Tools for their Hunting, and Tobacco, Brandy, and ſome Paint for Luxury, they would not go down to the Factory with what they now carry; at preſent they leave great Numbers of Furs and Skins behind them. A good Hunter among the *Indians* can kill 600 Beavers in a Seaſon, and can carry down but 100, the reſt he uſes at home, or hangs them upon Branches of Trees, upon the Death of their Children as an Offering to them, or uſe them for Bedding and Coverings; they ſometimes burn off the Fur, and roſt the Beavers like Pigs, upon any Entertainments, and they often let them rot, having no further Uſe of them. The Beavers, he ſays, are of three Colours; the brown reddiſh Colour, the black, and

and the white; the firſt is the cheapeſt; the black is moſt valued by the Company, and in *England*; the white, tho' moſt valued in *Canada*, giving 18 Shillings, when others gave 5 or 6 Shillings, is blown upon by the Company's Factors at the Bay, they not allowing ſo much for theſe as for the others; and therefore the *Indians* uſe them at home, or burn off the Hair, when they roaſt the Beavers like Pigs, at an Entertainment when they feaſt together; he ſays theſe Skins are extremely white, and have a fine Luſtre, no Snow being whiter, and have a fine long Fur or Hair; he has ſeen 15 taken of that Colour out of one Lodge or Pond. The Beavers have three Enemies, Man, Otters, and the Carcajon or Queequehatch, which prey upon them when they take them at an Advantage; the laſt is as large as a very great Dog, it has a ſhort Tail like a Deer or Hair, and has a good Fur, valued at a Beaver and half in Exchange. The Beavers chiefeſt Food is the Poplar or Tremble, but they alſo eat Sallows, Alders, and moſt other Trees not having a reſinous Juice; the middle Bark is their Food; in *May* when the Wood is not plenty, they live upon a large Root which grows in the Marſhes a Fathom long, and as thick as a Man's Leg, the *French* call it Volet; but the Beavers are not ſo good Food as when they feed upon Trees. They will cut down Trees above two Fathoms in Girth with their Teeth, and one of them obſerves when it is ready to fall, and gives a great Cry, and runs the contrary Way, to give Notice to the reſt to get out of the Way; they then cut off all the Top Twigs, and ſmaller Branches two or three Fathoms in Length, and draw them to their Houſes which they have built in their Ponds, after having raiſed or repaired their Pond Head, and made it ſtaunch, and thruſt one End into the Clay or Mud, that they may lie under Water all the Winter, to preſerve the Bark green and tender for their Winter Proviſion; after cutting off the ſmall Branches, they cut and carry away the larger, until they come to the Bole of the Tree. The Beavers are delicious Food, but the Tongue and Tail the moſt delicious Parts of the whole; they are very fat from *November* until the End of *March*; they have their Young in the Beginning of Summer, at which time the Females are lean by ſuckling their Young, and the Males are lean the whole Summer, when they are making or repairing their Ponds and Houſes, and cutting down and providing Timber and Branches for their Winter Store. They

breed

breed once in a Year, and have from ten to fifteen at a Litter, which grow up in one Seafon; fo that they multiply very faft, and if they can empty a Pond, and take the whole Lodge, they generally leave a Pair to breed, fo that they are fully ftocked again in two or three Years.

The Loup Cervier, or Lynx, is of the Cat Kind, but as large as a great Dog; it preys upon all Beafts it can conquer, as does the Tyger, which is the only Beaft in that Country that won't fly from a Man.

The *American* Oxen, or Beeves, have a large Bunch upon their Backs, which is by far the moft delicious Part of them for Food, it being all as fweet as Marrow, juicy and rich, and weighs feveral Pounds.

The *Indians* Weft of the Bay, living an erratick Life, can have no Benefit by tame Fowl or Cattle; they feldom ftay above a Fortnight in a Place, unlefs they find Plenty of Game. When they remove, after having built their Hut, they difperfe to get Game for their Food, and meet again at Night, after having killed enough to maintain them for that Day; they don't go above a League or two from their Hut. When they find Scarcity of Game, they remove a League or two farther, and thus they traverfe through thefe woody Countries and Bogs, fcarce miffing one Day, Winter or Summer, fair or foul, in the greateft Storms of Snow, but what they are employed in fome kind of Chace. The fmaller Game, got by Traps or Snares, are generally the Employment of the Women and Children, fuch as the Martins, Squirrels, Cats, Ermins, *&c.* The Elks, Stags, Rain-Deer, Bears, Tygers, wild Beeves, Wolves, Foxes, Beavers, Otters, Corcajeu, *&c.* are the Employment of the Men. The *Indians*, when they kill any Game for Food, leave it where they kill it, and fend their Wives next Day to carry it home. They go home in a direct Line, never miffing their Way, by Obfervations they make of the Courfe they take upon their going out, and fo judge upon what Point their Huts are, and can thus direct themfelves upon any Point of the Compafs. The Trees all bend towards the South, and the Branches on that Side are larger and ftronger than on the North Side, as alfo the Mofs upon the Trees. To let their Wives know how to come at the killed Game, they from Place to Place break off Branches, and

lay them in the Road, pointing them the Way they ſhould go, and ſometimes Moſs, ſo that they never miſs finding it.

In Winter, when they go abroad, which they muſt do in all Weathers, to hunt and ſhoot for their daily Food, before they dreſs they rub themſelves all over with Bears Greaſe, or Oil of Beavers, which does not freeze, and alſo rub all the Fur of their Beaver Coats, and then put them on; they have alſo a kind of Boots or Stockings of Beavers Skin well oiled, with the Fur inwards,and above them they have an oiled Skin laced about their Feet, which keeps out the Cold, and alſo Water, when there is no Ice or Snow; and by this Means they never freeze, nor ſuffer any thing by Cold. In Summer alſo, when they go naked, they rub themſelves with theſe Oils or Greaſe, and expoſe themſelves to the Sun, without being ſcorched, their Skins always being kept ſoft and ſupple by it; nor do any Flies, Bugs, or Muſketoes, or any noxious Inſect ever moleſt them. When they want to get rid of it, they go into the Water, and rub themſelves all over with Mud or Clay, and lets it dry upon them, and then rub it off; but whenever they are free from the Oil, the Flies and Muſketoes immediately attack them, and oblige them again to anoint themſelves.

The *Indians* make no Uſe of Honey; he ſaw no Bees there but the wild humble Bee; but they are ſo much afraid of being ſtung with them, they going naked in Summer, that they avoid them as much as they can; nor did he ſee any of the Maple they uſe in *Canada* to make Sugar of, but only the Birch, whoſe Juice they uſe for the ſame Purpoſe, boyling it until it is black and dry, and then uſing it with their Meat. They uſe no Milk from the Time they are weaned, and they all hate to taſte Cheeſe, having taken up an Opinion that it is made of dead Mens Fat. They love Pruins and Raiſins, and will give a Beaver Skin for twelve of them to carry to their Children, and alſo for a Trump or *Jew*'s Harp. He ſays the Women have all fine Voices, but have never heard any muſical Inſtrument. They are very fond of all kind of Pictures or Prints, giving a Beaver for the leaſt Print, and all Toys are like Jewels to them.

When he got to the Natives Southward of *Pachegoia*, he had about 30 Cowries left, and a few ſmall Bells leſs than Hawks Bells; when he ſhewed one of them, they gave him a Beaver Skin for one, and they were ſo fond, that ſome gave him two Skins, or

three

three Martin Skins for one, to give their Wives to make them fine. The Martins they take in Traps, for if they ſhot them, their Skins would be ſpoiled; they have generally five or ſix at a Litter.

He ſays the Natives are ſo diſcouraged in their Trade with the Company, that no Peltry is worth the Carriage, and the fineſt Furs are ſold for very little. When they came to the Factory in *June* 1742, the Prices they took for the *European* Goods were much higher than the ſettled Prices fixed by the Company, which the Governors fix ſo, to ſhew the Company how zealous they are to improve their Trade, and ſell their Goods to Advantage. He ſays they gave but a Pound of Gunpowder for 4 Beavers, a Fathom of Tobacco for 7 Beavers, a Pound of Shot for one, an Ell of coarſe Cloth for 15, a Blanket for 12, 2 Fiſh-hooks, or three Flints, for one, a Gun for 25, a Piſtol for 10, a common Hat with white Lace 7, an Ax 4, a Bill-hook 1, a Gallon of Brandy 4, a chequer'd Shirt 7, all which are ſold at a monſtrous Profit, even to 2000 *per Cent.* Notwithſtanding this Diſcouragement, the two Fleets which went down with him, and parted at the great Fork, carried down 200 Packs of 100 each, 20000 Beavers; and the other *Indians* who arrived that Year, he computed carried down 300 Packs of 200 each, 30000, in all 50000 Beavers, and above 9000 Martins.

The Furs there are much more valuable than the Furs upon the *Canada* Lakes, ſold at *New-York*; for theſe will give five or ſix Shillings *per* Pound, when the others ſell at three Shillings and Sixpence. He ſays, that if a Fort was built at the great Fork, 60 Leagues above *York* Fort, and a Factory with *European* Goods were fixed there, and a reaſonable Price was put upon *European* Goods, that the Trade would be wonderfully increaſed; for the Natives from the Southward of *Pachegoia*, could make at leaſt two Returns in a Summer, and thoſe at greater Diſtances could make one, who can't now come at all; and above double the Number would be employed in Hunting, and many more Skins would be brought to Market, that they can't now afford to bring for the Expence and low Price given for them. The Stream is ſo gentle from the Fork to *York* Fort, on either Branch, that large Veſſels and Shallops may be built there, and carry down bulky Goods, and alſo return again againſt the Stream; and the Climate is good,

 and

and fit to produce Grain, Pulſe, *&c.* and very good Graſs and Hay for Horſes and Cattle; and if afterwards any Settlements were made upon *Pachegoia*, and Veſſels built to navigate that Lake, which is not more northerly than Lat. 52°. the Trade would be ſtill vaſtly more enlarged and improved, and ſpread the Trade not only up the Rivers and Lakes as far as the Lake *Du Bois* and *De Pluis*, but alſo among the *Aſſinibouels* and Nations beyond them, and the Nation *de vieux Hommes*, who are 200 Leagues Weſtward of *Pachegoia*. He ſays the Nations who go up that River with Preſents to confirm the Peace with them, are three Months in going up, and ſay they live beyond a Range of Mountains beyond the *Aſſinibouels*, and that beyond them are Nations who have not the Uſe of Fire Arms, by which Means many of them are made Slaves by them, and are ſold to the *Aſſinibouels*, *Panis Blanc*, and *Chriſtinaux*. He ſaw ſeveral of them, who all wanted a Joynt of their little Finger, which they ſaid was cut off ſoon after they were born, but gave no Reaſon for it.

Whilſt he was at *York* Fort he got acquainted with an old *Indian*, who lived at ſome Diſtance from *Nelſon* River, to the Weſtward, being one of thoſe they call the *Home Indians*, who had, about 15 Years ago, gone at the Head of 30 Warriors to make war againſt the *Attimoſpiquais*, *Tete Plat*, or *Plaſcotez de Chiens*, a Nation living Northward on the Weſtern Ocean of *America*; he was the only one who returned, all the reſt being either killed, or periſhed through Fatigue or want of Food, upon their Return. When they went they carried their whole Families with them, and hunted and fiſhed from Place to Place for two Winters, and one Summer, having left their Country in Autumn, and in *April* following, came to the Sea-ſide, on the Weſtern Coaſt, where they immediately made their Canoes. At ſome little Diſtance they ſaw an Iſland, which was about a League and a Half long when the Tide was out, or Water fell, they had no Water betwixt them and the Iſland, but when it roſe, it covered all the Paſſage betwixt them and the Iſland as high up as the Woods upon the Shore. There they left their Wives and Children, and old Men to conduct them home, and provide them with Proviſions, by hunting and ſhooting for them upon the Road; and he, with 30 Warriors, went in queſt of their Enemies the *Tete Plat*. After they parted with their Families, they came to a Streight, which they

 paſſed

paſſed in their Canoes. The Sea Coaſt lay almoſt Eaſt and Weſt, for he ſaid the Sun roſe upon his Right-hand, and at Noon it was almoſt behind him, as he paſſed the Streight, and always ſet in the Sea. After paſſing the Streight they coaſted along the Shore for three Months, going into the Country and Woods as they went along to hunt for Proviſions. He ſaid they ſaw a great many large black Fiſh ſpouting up Water in the Sea. After they had thus coaſted for near three Months, they ſaw the Footſteps of ſome Men on the Sand, by which they judged they were not far from their Enemies, upon which they quit their Canoes, and went five Days through the Woods and Buſhes, which were but very low and ſhrubby, and ſo cloſe, they could with Difficulty make way through it, and then came to the Banks of a River, where they found a large Town of their Enemies, and after making their uſual Cry, they diſcharged their Arrows and Guns againſt thoſe who appeared, upon which they fled; but upon finding how few they were, they returned and killed 15 of them, and wounded 3 or 4 more, upon which they fled to the Woods, and from thence made their Eſcape to their Canoes before their Enemies overtook them, and after a great deal of Fatigue got to the Streight, and after getting over, they all died one after another, except this old Man, of Fatigue and Famine, leaving him alone to travel to his own Country, which took him up about a Year's Time, having left his Gun when his Ammunition was ſpent, and loſt all his Arrows, and upon his Return had not even a Knife with him; ſo that he was reduced to live upon Herbs and the Moſs growing upon the Rocks, and was almoſt famiſhed when he reached the River *Sakie*, where he met his Friends again, who relieved him, when he deſpaired of ever again ſeeing his own Country. This is the Account, ſo far as *Joſeph la France* could inform me, of thoſe Countries Southward of *York* Fort, which may be brought to trade there.

Mr. *Froſt*, who has been many Years employed by the Company in the Bay, both at *Churchill* and *Mooſe* River Factory, who was their Interpreter with the Natives, and travelled a conſiderable Way into the Country, both North-weſtward of *Churchill*, and Southward of *Mooſe* River Factory, and has reſided at *Mooſe* River ſince the Factory was made there in 1730, gives a very good Account of the Climate and Country there, and up the River South-

ward

ward of it. He ſays the Factory is built near the Mouth of the River, in Lat. 51°. 28′. upon a navigable River, which at 12 Miles Diſtance Southward of the Fort, is divided into two Branches, one comes from the Southward, the other from the South-weſt; upon the Southern Branch all Sorts of Grain thrives, as Barley, Beans and Peaſe do at the Factory, tho' expoſed to all the chilling Winds which comes from the Ice in the Bay. Upon the Southern Branch above the Falls, there grows naturally along the River the ſame Kind of wild Oats or Rice, mentioned already upon the Lake of *Siens*, the Huſk being black, but the Grain within perfectly white and clear like Rice, the *Indians* beating it off into their Canoes when ripe, as they paſs along the River, it growing in the Water like Rice. In their Woods, at the Bottom of the Bay at *Mooſe* and *Albany*, as well as at *Rupert*'s River, are very large Timber Trees of all Kinds, Oak, Aſh, *&c.* as well as Pine, Cedar and Spruce; they have exceeding good Graſs to make Hay, which improves every Day as they cut and feed it, and may have every where within Land all Sorts of Pulſe and Grain, and all Sorts of Fruit Trees as in the ſame Climates in *Europe*, for what Sorts they have tried thrive very well; the Ice breaks up at *Mooſe* Factory in the Beginning of *April*, but higher up in the Country in *March*; it is navigable for Canoes a great Way up among the Falls; at a conſiderable Diſtance there is one Fall of 50 Feet, but above that it is deep and navigable for a great Way. The Climate above the Fall is very good, and the River abounds with that wild Rice. The *French* have got a Houſe or Settlement for Trade near the Southern Branch, about 100 Miles above the Factory, where they ſell their Goods cheaper than the Company do, altho' it be ſo difficult to carry them ſo far from *Canada*, and very expenſive, and give as much for a Martin's Skin as they do for a Beaver, when we inſiſt upon three for one; ſo that the *French* get all the choice Skins, and leave only the Refuſe for the Company. The *French* have alſo got another Houſe pretty high up upon *Rupert* River, by which they have gained all the Trade upon the Eaſt Main, except a little the Company get at *Slude* River. He ſays, upon the South Side of the great Inland Sea upon the Eaſt Main, which has lately been diſcovered, there is an exceeding rich Lead Mine, from which the Natives have brought very good Ore, which might turn out to great Advantage, as well as

 the

the Furs upon that Coaſt, which might be vaſtly increaſed, if the Trade was laid open and Settlements made in proper Places. He ſays when he was at *Churchill*, he travelled a conſiderable Way in the Country North-weſtward of the River of *Seals*; that near the Rivers and Sea-coaſt, there was ſmall ſhrubby Woods, but for many Miles, at leaſt 60 farther into the Country, they had nothing but a barren white Moſs upon which the Rain-Deer feed, and alſo the *Mooſe*, Buffalos, and other Deer; and the Natives told him, further Weſtward beyond that barren Country, there were large Woods. He was acquainted, when there about fifteen Years ago, with an *Indian* Chief, who traded at *Churchill*, who had been often at a fine Copper Mine, which they ſtruck off from the Rocks with ſharp Stones; he ſaid it was upon Iſlands at the Mouth of a River, and lay to the Northward of that Country where they had no Night in Summer.

As to the Trade at *Churchill* it is increaſing, it being at too great a Diſtance from the *French* for them to interfere in the Trade. The Year 1742 it amounted to 20,000 Beavers: There were about 100 Upland *Indians* came in their Canoes to trade, and about 200 Northern *Indians*, who brought their Furs and Peltry upon Sledges; ſome of them came down the River of *Seals*, 15 Leagues Northward of *Churchill*, in Canoes, and brought their Furs from thence by Land. They have no Beavers to Northward of *Churchill*, they not having there ſuch Ponds or Woods as they chooſe or feed upon, but they have great Numbers of Martins, Foxes, Bears, Rain-Deer, Buffalos, Wolves, and other Beaſts of rich Furs, the Country being moſtly rocky, and covered with a white Moſs upon which the Rain-Deer or Cariboux feed. There is a great deal of ſmall Wood of the Spruce or Fir Kind near the old Factory, but the Wood improves as it is further up the River from the Bay, where they have Juniper, Birch and Poplar, and more Southerly the Timber is larger, and there are greater Variety of Trees. They are under great Inconveniencies at the new Fort, which is upon an elevated Situation upon a Rock without Shelter, cloſe by the Shore, ſurrounded with Snow and Ice for eight Months in the Year, expoſed to all the Winds and Storms that happen, where they can have no Conveniency of Graſs or Hay or Gardening, and yet they had four or five Horſes there, and a Bull and two Cows near the Factory; but they were obliged

to

to bring their Hay from a marſhy Bottom ſome Miles up the River, to feed them in Winter; but if a Settlement were made higher up the River Southward, ſome Leagues from the Bay, in Shelter without the Reach of the chilling Winds, they would have Graſs and Hay ſufficient, and might have alſo Gardens and proper Greens and Roots propagated there.

They ſay there is a Communication betwixt that River and *Nelſon* River at a great Diſtance within Land, or a very ſhort Land Carriage betwixt them; for the *Indians* who trade here, tell them each Seaſon what Chiefs, with their Followers, go down that Year to *Nelſon* or *Albany* Rivers.

The Company avoid all they can making Diſcoveries to Northward of *Churchill*, or extending their Trade that Way, for fear they ſhould diſcover a Paſſage to the Weſtern Ocean of *America*, and tempt, by that Means, the reſt of the *Engliſh* Merchants to lay open their Trade, which they know they have no legal Right to, which, if the Paſſage was found, would not only animate the reſt of the Merchants to purſue the Trade through that Paſſage, but alſo to find out the great Advantages that might be made of the Trade of the Rivers and Countries adjoining to the Bay, by which Means they would loſe their beloved Monopoly; but the Proſpect they have of Gain to be made with trading with the *Eſkimaux Indians*, for Whale-Fin, Whale and Seal Oil, and Sea-Horſe Teeth, induces them to venture a Sloop annually as far 62°. 30′. to *Whale Cove*, where theſe *Indians* meet them, and truck their Fin and Oil with them: But tho' they are fully informed of a fine Copper Mine on a navigable Arm of the Sea North-weſtward of *Whale Cove*, and the *Indians* have offered to carry their Sloops to it, yet their Fear of diſcovering the Paſſage puts Bounds to their Avarice, and prevents their going to the Mine, which by all Accounts is very rich; yet thoſe who have been at *Whale Cove* own, that from thence Northwards is all broken Land, and that after paſſing ſome Iſlands, they from the Hills ſee the Sea open, leading to the Weſtward; and the *Indians* who have been often at the Mine ſay, it is upon a navigable Arm of the Sea of great Depth, leading to the South-weſt, where are great Numbers of large black Fiſh ſpouting Water, which confirms the Opinion, that all the Whales ſeen betwixt *Whale Cove* and *Wager* River, all come there from the Weſtern Ocean, ſince none are ſeen any where elſe in

Hudſon's

Hudſon's Bay or *Strait.* All along this Coaſt from Lat. 62°. to 65°. a very beneficial Fiſhery of Whales may be carried on with theſe *Eſkimaux Indians*, who even without the Uſe of Iron, can harpoon and kill Whales, and if they were ſupplied with Iron Harpoons, and with proper Cordage, might be brought to kill great Numbers of them; at preſent all their Nets, Lines and Snares are made of Whale-bone, and moſt of their Boats and other Neceſſaries of that, Seal Skins, Fiſh Bones, and Sea-Horſe Teeth, and in making all Things neceſſary for them they are very neat and ingenious.

From theſe ſeveral Journals, and from the Accounts taken from Monſieur *Jeremie* and *De la Poterie*, and from *Joſeph la France* and Mr. *Froſt*, we may frame a tolerable Judgment of the Climate, Soil, Rivers, and Lakes adjoining to the Bay, and the great Advantage to be made by improving our Trade there, by making Factories or Settlements upon ſeveral of theſe fine Rivers and Inland Lakes; for tho' the Names, Situation and Diſtances of theſe Lakes are not the ſame, being taken from *Indians* perhaps of different Nations and Languages, and by People who had no Opportunity, or perhaps were not capable of fixing the proper Latitudes or Longitudes of theſe Lakes, yet they all concur that there are many noble and great Rivers and Lakes extending to the Southward, South-weſtward, and Weſtward of the Bay, in fine Countries and temperate Climates, the Lands and Countries being capable of great Improvement, and to afford a Trade of great Extent, and in Time, of an immenſe Profit. I ſhall therefore, from theſe Accounts make ſome Obſervations upon the Climate, Soil and Improvements which may be made by Trade in the ſeveral Parts of the Bay already known, and then ſhew the Probability of extending it by a new Paſſage to the Weſtern Countries of *America*, and through that great Weſtern Ocean.

The Soil and Climates are vaſtly different in the ſeveral Countries adjoining to the Bay. The Eaſt Main, from *Slude* River to *Hudſon*'s Streight, is leaſt known, there being no Factories fixed there for Trade, altho' the beſt Sable and black Fox Skins are got there. Here the *Nodway* or *Eſkimaux Indians* live, who are in a manner hunted and deſtroyed by the more Southerly *Indians*, being perpetually at war with each other. They ſeem not to be Natives of *America*, but rather *Europeans* from *Greenland*. The

French imagine they are defcended from *Bifcayners*, they having Beards up to the Eyes, which the *Americans* have not; they are of a white Complexion, not Copper coloured like the other *Americans*, having black, ftrong Hair. They live in Caves under the Snow in Winter, feeding upon Seals Flefh and dried Fifh, drinking the Oil, and ufing it for their Lamps, with which they alfo greafe their Bodies, which defends them from the piercing icy Particles in the Air. If when travelling a Storm of Snow is too violent for them to withftand, they dig a Hole in the Snow five or fix Feet deep, and cover the Hole with Skins or Branches, and fo lie warm under the Storm. Upon this Coaft, in Lat. 59°. near Cape *Smith*, is a Paffage lately difcovered into an inland Sea, 300 Leagues in Circuit, which, if a proper Ufe was made of it, would open a confiderable Trade for Furs into the Heart of the *Terra de Labarador*, which the Company now neglects for fear of Expence, as they do all the Coaft on the Eaft Main, having only a Houfe, with feven or eight Servants, at *Slude* River, in Lat. 52°. 30′. It is near the South Side of this Sea that the rich Lead Mine has been lately difcovered, which would alfo turn to very good Account, if a Settlement was there in about Lat. 56°. or 57°. it would be in as good a Climate as at *York* Fort or *New Severn*, which is in a Climate equal to the middle Part of *Sweden* or *Livonia*, being in the Latitude of *Edinburgh*; and if one was made in 59°. near Cape *Smith*, it would be equal to that now at *Churchill*.

Rupert River, in about Lat. 51°. is in a very good Climate, and is a fine River, well wooded, having eight Feet Water at the Entrance, and the Tide rifes eight Feet; the River is a Mile over, and cometh from the Southward of the Eaft; it is about 150 Leagues from St. *Margaret*'s River, which falleth into St. *Laurence* in *Canada*. A little to Southward of *Rupert*'s is *Frenchman*'s and *Nodway* Rivers; thefe run from S. E. and S. S. E. from Sources a great Way up in the Country; the laft is 5 Miles broad to the Falls. Thefe, tho' in fo good a Climate, are all neglected by the Company, upon account of the Neighbourhood of the *French*, who have encroached upon them, and have a trading Houfe upon the Head of *Rupert*'s River, by which they have engroffed almoft all the Trade of the Eaft Main. To avoid Expence they will not fix a fufficient Factory there to recover fo great a Trade, nor will allow any other from *Britain* to fettle there and trade, choofing rather

to

to give it up to the *French* than to their Countrymen, that they may preferve their prefent Monopoly to themfelves. The Factories at prefent on *Moofe* River, in Lat. 51°. 28′. and in *Albany*, in Lat. 52°. on the South-weft of the Bay, are at prefent in a very tolerable Climate, being the fame with thefe already mentioned, but would be in a vaftly better Climate, if they were fixed fome Miles higher up, at fome Diftance from the chilling Winds in the Bay, where it appears all Sorts of Grain and Pulfe would grow to Perfection, and moft kind of *European* Fruits. Here they may have Horfes, Cows, Sheep, and all other domeftick Animals, here being excellent Grafs, and very good Hay may be made of it, which would improve by feeding and cutting it for their Ufe in Winter; and all Sorts of Grain may be had for their Ufe, as well as for the Inhabitants, wild Oats or Rice growing in Abundance fpontaneoufly farther up the Rivers to the Southward, at fome Diftance from the Bay. The *Moofe* River is a noble, large River, which cometh from two Branches, Southward and South-weftward, of the Bay, for fome hundred Miles from the Mountains, above the *Huron* and Upper Lakes, to near Lat. 48°. There are feveral Falls upon it, but above the Falls it is again navigable a great Way into the Country, from whence the Natives come down fome Hundreds of Miles in their Canoes to trade at the Factory; yet, from the Avarice of the Company, they have in a manner left that Southern Trade to the *French*, having allowed the *French* to have a trading Houfe upon, or near, the Southern Branch of *Moofe* River, within three Days Journey, not 100 Miles from that Factory; who, at fo many hundred Miles from *Canada*, underfell the Company, and carry away all the valuable Furs, leaving only the Refufe to them, becaufe of the exorbitant Prices they take for their Goods from the Natives in Exchange. If the Trade was opened, and thefe Rivers on the Bottom of the Bay were fettled farther up in the Country, they would have a very temperate, fine Climate, with all Neceffaries for Life, and even for Luxury. Here are very fine Woods of all Kinds of large Timber for Shipping or Building, where they may have all Sorts of Fruit and Grain, tame Cattle and Fowl. The Rivers abound with excellent Fifh, and the Woods with Wildfowl, and moft kind of wild Beafts for Profit or Pleafure. Goofeberries, Rafpberries and Strawberries, grow wild in the Woods, every thing in Gardens would grow with proper Culture. In

the Country the Snow and Froſt breaks up in *March*, and does not begin again until about *November*.

Albany River is alſo very conſiderable, in Lat. 52°. and cometh from W. S. W. and within Land has the ſame Climate and other Advantages; at preſent the Situation of the Factories of *Mooſe* and *Albany* are very unhappy, being placed in the Swamps, at the Mouths of the Rivers; for the Company's chief Aim being Trade, they don't regard the Soil, Aſpect or Situation, where they fix them, provided they are upon navigable Rivers where their Ships can approach them, and where the Natives can come in their Canoes; ſo that their Factories there, are placed in a low ſwampy Ground, which is overflowed by the Rivers upon the breaking up of the Ice, which makes them much moiſter and warmer in Summer, and colder in Winter, from the Quantity of Ice there is in Winter in the Rivers and Bay: If they had fixed them higher up in the Country, where the Thaw begins much ſooner than at the Bay, they would have had a happier Situation, and a quite different Climate and Soil. How can it be expected that any Thing can thrive in their Garden, or be brought to Perfection? when the Floods in the latter End of *April* leave Flakes of Ice ſeveral Feet thick in their Gardens, which are not diſſolved until the latter End of *May*; and yet after that Time, when they dig their Gardens, they have very good Coleworts and Turnips, green Peaſe and Beans, when if they had been ſituated higher up in the Country from the Bay, they might have had all Sorts of Fruit, Grain and Roots in Perfection, and tame Cattle and Fowl for their Uſe; at preſent the Company's Servants depend upon the Fiſh and wild Geeſe they take for their Winter Store. They have Pike, Trout, Perch, and white Trout in great Perfection in all their Rivers; but the principal Fiſh they take is a little larger than a Mackarel, of which 13 or 14000 are taken at *Albany* in a Seaſon, which ſupplies them and their *Indian* Friends in Winter; theſe they take after the Rivers are frozen over, keeping Holes open in the Ice, in a ſtreight Line at proper Diſtances, through which they thruſt their Nets with Poles, and the Fiſh coming there to breathe, are maſk'd or entangled in the Net; theſe they freeze up for Winter without Salt. The wild Geeſe come to theſe Rivers from the Southward in the Middle of *April*, as ſoon as the Swamps are thawed, at which Time they are lean; they ſtay

 until

until the Middle of *May*, when they go Northward to breed; they take at *Albany* in that Seafon about 1300 for prefent Ufe; they return again with their young about the Middle of *Auguft*, and ftay until the Middle of *October*, when they go farther Southward; they fave generally about 3000 of thefe, which they falt before the Froft begins, and what they take afterwards they hang up in their Feathers to freeze for Winter Store, without Salt; the Natives fhoot them in the Swamps. There are three Kinds, one a grey Goofe, which without Giblets weighs from 6 to 10 Pounds, another which they call Whaweys, are from 4 to 6 Pounds; they have alfo Swans, grey Plover exceeding fat, white Partridges as big as Capons, in Abundance all Winter and Spring, which feed upon the Buds of Spruce, Birch and Poplars.

The *New Severn* River, which the *French* call *St. Huiles*, is in Lat. 56°. this the Company neglects, to avoid Expence, tho' it be a very fine River, well wooded, capable of receiving Ships of 50 or 60 Tons Burthen, and full of Beavers and other wild Beafts of rich Furs; for they being too far off the *French*, they oblige them to come to *Albany* or *York* Fort, with their Furs. The River *Bourbon* or *Nelfon*, upon whofe South-eaftern Branch is *York* Fort in *Hay's* Ifland in Lat. 57°. is one of the nobleft Rivers in *America*, and by much the fineft and largeft in the Bay, and tho' the Names given to the feveral Lakes and Rivers which enter into thefe Lakes, which are upon it, betwixt its Source on the South-weft Side of the Upper Lake, and *York* Fort are different, according to the Accounts given by *Jeremie*, *De la Poterie*, and *Jofeph la France*, yet they all agree in this, that there are a great Number of very large Lakes upon it, at great Diftances within Land, South-wefterly and Wefterly from the Bay, in fine Climates and fruitful Countries, among many populous erratick Nations, fuch as the *Affiniibouels*, *Chriftinaux*, *Savanna*, *Monfoni*, *Vieux Hommes*, *Tête Plat*, *Panis Blanc*, *Sturgeon Indians*, &c. which abound with all Sorts of excellent Fifh, and are navigable for many hundred Leagues, tho' the Rivers which fall into them have feveral Sharps and Falls, which occafions feveral Land Carriages, yet Canoes pafs and repafs all thefe Lakes and Rivers from its Source to *York* Fort, the Natives coming down for above a thoufand Miles to trade there.

The

The Climate at *York* Fort, tho' in Lat. 57°. ſeems not to be colder than at *Albany* in 52°. ſince, if the Account taken from *Button* be true, the Ice broke up there in that River on the 26th of *April*, and the River, tho' not above a Mile broad, was not that Year frozen over the 16th of *February*, when at *Albany* it was frozen over in the Beginning of *November*, and it did not break up at the Factory until the Beginning of *May*; this might probably be occaſioned by the Strength of the Tide at *Port Nelſon*, which roſe ſometimes 14 Feet, when at *Albany* it does not riſe 4 Feet, and the Waters of *Nelſon* River run from the Southward, from more immediately warm Climates, when that at *Albany* comes from the W. S. W. and all the Bottom of the Bay being full of Ice, makes the Cold more intenſe and continue longer at the Mouth of that River.

This ſeems confirmed from *La France*'s Account, that within four or five Leagues of the Sea at *York Fort*, the Cold continued, and there was Ice in the River in *June*, when above that they had a fine Spring, all the Trees in Bloom, and very warm Weather, up to the great Fork in the Beginning of *June*, and in the River from thence to *Pachegoia*, or the *Lake of Foreſts*, there was a fine Spring and Bloom from the Beginning of *May*, all the Lands about that Lake, and to the Southwards, being free from Ice and Snow, in the Beginning of *April* N. S. ſo that here is an excellent Soil and Climate upon this River, a few Days ſailing up the River, even below the great Fork, which is but 60 Leagues to the Southward, and the River navigable ſo far with large Shallops and Boats.

This River opens a Trade into a Country of ſurprizing Greatneſs through the Lakes *Pachegoia*, *Coriboux*, *Siens*, *Great* and *Little Ouinipique*, the Lakes *Du Bois*, *De Pluis*, and *Red Lake*, according to *La France*, and the Rivers *Vieux Hommes* and others which enter theſe ſeveral Lakes; or by the *Lake of Foreſts*, the *Great Water*, the *Junction of the two Seas*, *Tacamiouan* and others, according to *Jeremie*, abounding with all Kinds of Game, Fiſh, and Beaſts of rich Furs, in excellent Climates, abounding with Timber Trees of all Sorts, and wild Fruit, and capable of all other Kinds of Fruit and Grain upon Cultivation. What an immenſe Trade might be begun and improved through theſe Countries? for the Natives being numerous, and of a humane Diſpoſition, upon having

ving an equitable Commerce with us, would ſoon be civilized and become induſtrious. In ſuch rich and delightful Climates, what a Vent might be had there for our Woollen and Iron Manufactures, as well as for others, may be eaſily conceived?

At preſent the Company have a little wooden Fort upon *Hay*'s Iſland much decayed, in which they keep 25 Servants to manage their Trade, from whence they return annually about 50000 Beavers Skins, or other Furs to that Value, under all the Diſadvantages the *Indians* trade with them at preſent. Northwards from this in Lat. 59°. is *Churchill* River, where the Climate, at ſome Diſtance from the Bay, is not worſe than at *Stockholm* or *Petersburgh*. This River is navigable for 150 Leagues; and again, after paſſing ſome Mountains, is navigable far to the Weſtward, to a Country abounding in Copper. This communicates with the River of *Stags*, which falls into the great Lakes upon *Nelſon* River, inſomuch that the South-weſtern and Weſtern Part of the Bay, without including the Southern or Eaſtern Sides, would in ſome Years, if ſettled and improved by civilizing the Natives, afford an inexhauſtible Fund for Trade. The preſent Situation of the Prince of *Wales*'s Fort on *Churchill* River is vaſtly cold, and for that Reaſon very inconvenient, as are all the other Factories in the Bay, all the others being fixed with a View only to Profit, and this alone for Profit and Strength, without any View to other Conveniencies, and therefore they have fixed it upon an Eminence 40 Feet high, ſurrounded on all Sides, without any Shelter, by a frozen Sea and River, and Plains of Snow, expoſed to all Storms, which cauſes its being colder than in proper Situations within the Polar Circle, being vaſtly colder than a few Leagues up the River among the Woods, where the Factory's Men lived comfortably in Huts or Tents all the Winter, without any Complaint of Cold or Sickneſs, hunting, ſhooting and fiſhing the whole Seaſon.

The Trade upon this River, tho' very much ſhort of that on *Nelſon* River, yet is very much increaſed. Laſt Year, 1742, it amounted to 20000 Beavers, and all the Amount of *Mooſe*, *Albany* and *Slude*, don't exceed it, but rather falls ſhort of it, which is occaſioned by the Monopoly, Avarice and Weakneſs, of the Company, they having but 25 Men in *Albany*, as many at *Mooſe* River, and 7 or 8 at *Slude*, upon the Eaſt Main, and have therefore ſuffered the *French* to encroach upon them, and to trade and ſettle at the

the Head of *Rupert*'s River, and near *Moofe* River, within three Days Journey of their Factory, betraying the *Englifh* Right to that Part of the Bay, by giving up the Poffeffion to the *French* by their Weaknefs, and have loft the Trade there to them by their Avarice, upon account of the exorbitant Gain they take upon their Goods from the Natives of near 2000 *per Cent.* Profit, taking a Beaver Skin, worth from eight to nine Shillings in *England*, for a Quart of *Englifh* Spirits, mixed with a Third Water, which probably may coft them a Groat; they alfo in Exchange value three Martins or Sable Skins at one Beaver, when the *French* give as much for a Martin as for a Beaver; fo that the Natives carry all their beft Furs to the *French*, and leave them the Refufe; for which Reafon, and the *French* giving them Goods at a cheaper Rate than the Company, all the Eaftern and Southern Trade is in a manner loft to the *French*, and a confiderable Part of the South-weftern Trade, they fcarce preferving the Trade at *York* Fort and *Churchill* River to themfelves; fo that were the Trade laid open, and the Southern and Weftern Countries fettled, we might not only regain that Trade from the *French*, which would probably increafe our Profit from 40000 *l.* which the Company gain at prefent upon their Trade, to 100000 *l.* but we might in a fhort Time increafe it to 200000 *l.* by fupplying the Natives with Woollen Goods, Iron Tools, Guns, Powder and Shot, at reafonable Rates; for by this Treatment, and fixing Factories for Goods higher up the Rivers, upon *Rupert*'s, *Moofe*, *Albany*, and *Nelfon* Rivers; by having Markets nearer them, and cheaper, the Number of Hunters would increafe, and would bring four times as many Furs, befides other valuable Skins, not worth the Carriage at prefent, and they would make two Returns for one, and many come from greater Diftances, which don't now come at all; and we fhould have all that now perifh and rot, and they ufe at home, by getting better and cheaper *European* Goods in Return, and a fhorter and quicker Carriage to Market; this would make them more induftrious, and would preferve the Lives of many of them who can't fubfift now without Fire Arms and Iron Tools, having in great Meafure loft the Ufe of Arrows, and inftead of our exporting to the Value of 2 or 3000 *l.* which is the moft the Company exports in one Seafon, we might export to the Value of 100000 *l.* in coarfe Woollen and Iron Manufactures, Powder, Shot, Spirits, Tobacco,

Paint,

Paint, and Toys, which would afford Subſiſtence and Employment to our induſtrious Poor, and yet the Merchant might gain near *Cent. per Cent.* upon his Trade. By increaſing our Settlements to the Southward, in the Bottom of the Bay, we ſhould by this Encouragement make all the Natives our Friends, by underſelling the *French*, and ſecuring the Trade, and force the *French* out of their Trade upon the Eaſt Main, and Countries North of *Huron*, and the other *Canada* Lakes, and become ſo powerful, as not to fear the *French* in caſe of a War; whereas at preſent, if a War ſhould commence, the Company in a few Weeks would loſe all their Factories in the Bottom of the Bay, and *York* Fort, where they have but 25 Men, would ſoon after fall into their Hands; for they have none but the Prince of *Wales*'s Fort at *Churchill* that is in a State of Defence, and even there they keep but 28 Men to defend a Fort in which they have 40 Guns mounted. Such is the melancholy Situation of our Factories and Trade in ſo extended a Country at preſent, from the Monopoly and Covetouſneſs of the Company, who have been in Poſſeſſion of Part of theſe Countries to the Southward from the Time of their Charter in 1670, above 70 Years, and have enjoyed the reſt uninterrupted from 1714 near 30 Years; yet, tho' they have had the moſt extenſive Powers granted to them that were ever granted to any Company, the whole Property and excluſive Trade of all theſe Countries, and all others they ſhould diſcover from thence not poſſeſſed by any Chriſtian Power; with a Power to make War, raiſe Troops, and fit out Ships of War to preſerve their Poſſeſſions, to induce them to diſcover, plant and improve, theſe Countries, and to extend the *Britiſh* Trade, by finding out a Paſſage to the Weſtern Ocean of *America*; yet they have been ſo baſe to their Country, as not only to neglect it themſelves, but to prevent and diſcourage any Attempt to find out ſo beneficial a Paſſage, and have alſo prevented any Perſons from ſettling in thoſe Countries, which would have effectually ſecured all their Factories, and put them out of Danger of being inſulted by the *French* in caſe of a War, and this with a View only of keeping a Monopoly and excluſive Trade to themſelves from the reſt of the *Britiſh* Merchants, which they have no Right to by Law, it being only granted by Charter, without Act of Parliament. But ſuppoſing they had a legal Right, they have forfeited their Right by not ſettling theſe Countries, and pre-

venting any of his Majeſty's Subjects from ſettling there ; ſo that they have forfeited their Right to all theſe Countries except their preſent Factories, upon account of their not taking in, and ſettling upon thoſe Lands : Beſides, they have not only neglected to find a Paſſage to the Weſtern Ocean, but have alſo refuſed to look for it, and have diſcouraged and endeavoured to ſeduce others from finding it, by offering Rewards or Bribes to Captain *Middleton*, who was employed by the Government to make that Diſcovery, as he informed me; tho' the attempting that Diſcovery was the chief Prayer for their Patent, and the principal Motive which induced King *Charles* to grant them their Charter, which was then given to ſome of the moſt conſiderable Noblemen, Gentlemen and Merchants, in *England*, but now is confin'd to eight or nine private Merchants, who have ingroſſed nine Tenths of the Company's Stock, and by that Means are perpetual Directors; the ſmall Proportion of Stock which is in other Hands, when ſold, being purchaſed by thoſe who have in a manner ingroſſed the whole, it not being allowed to go to a publick Market.

What great Advantages might *Britain* by this time have receiv'd, had the Proprietors ſettled theſe Countries after the ſame manner our other Colonies are ſettled, at a trifling Quit-rent, with a Freedom of Trade to all *Britiſh Subjects*? We ſhould, by this time, have had populous Settlements, and an extenſive Trade in the Southern and Weſtern Countries adjoining the Bay, among thoſe noble Rivers and Lakes which have their Sources in, and run through temperate and healthy Climates, in rich and fruitful Countries. The *Slude*, or *Petre* River, in Lat. 52°. the Rivers *Rupert*, *Frenchman*'s, and *Nodway*, at the South-weſt Corner of the Bay, in Lat. 51°. which have their Courſes ſome Hundreds of Miles into the Country, even to the Latitude of 48°. or 49°. in a Climate as good as *North France* and *Germany*. The *Mooſe* River, which diſembogues in Lat. 51°. 28′. in the South-weſt Corner, and is by two Branches navigable for the moſt part from Lat. 48°. and 49°. in the ſame Climate as the others, by which the *Indians* deſcend ſome hundred Miles to the Factory from near the Upper Lake, whence by a Land Carriage they come at a River which falls into that Lake.

The River *Albany*, tho' not ſo large, yet is navigable ſome hundred Miles W. S. W. and enters the Bay in Lat. 52°. coming from ſome of thoſe Lakes which communicate with *Nelſon* River, running through fertile and woody Countries in a temperate Climate.

The *New Severn* enters the Bay, in Lat. 56°. and comes from the South-weſt from at leaſt 53°. through a rich and fertile Country, full of fine Woods for above 100 Leagues, full of Beavers and other Beaſts of rich Furs, having Branches which communicate with *Albany* and *Nelſon* Rivers.

The River *Nelſon*, or *Bourbon*, opens a Navigation into a Country of ſurprizing Greatneſs, through many Lakes of great Extent, having many navigable Rivers running into them from diſtant Countries in delightful Climates, even to Lat. 46°. and to Nations adjoining to the Weſtern Ocean.

Churchill River, in Lat. 59°. a noble River, navigable for 150 Leagues, and after paſſing the Falls, navigable again to far diſtant Countries, abounding in Mines of Copper, and other rich Commodities, even to the Weſtern Sea; ſo that the Southern and Weſtern Parts of the Bay would, in ſome Time, afford an inexhauſtible Fund for Trade; nor is the Eaſt Side of the Bay deſpicable, about the new diſcover'd Inland-ſea, where there are rich Furs, and Mines of Lead. What an immenſe Trade might be begun and carried on from theſe Countries; for the Natives, being numerous, and of a humane Diſpoſition, inclin'd to trade, upon having an equitable Trade with us, would be ſoon civilized, and become induſtrious, in ſuch rich and delightful Climates? What a Vent might be had in thoſe Countries for our Woollen, Iron, and other Manufactures, may be eaſily conceived: So that by opening the Trade, and ſettling theſe Countries, the *French* in time would be confined to the Rivers which fall into the River St. *Laurence*, and be deprived of all their North-weſtern Trade.

The North-weſt Part of the Bay, beyond the *River of Seals*, in Lat. 60. is the moſt incapable of Improvement, there being little Wood to be had there near the Bay; nor is it neceſſary to have any Settlements there, unleſs one ſhould be made for convicted Felons, by way of Puniſhment or Baniſhment, as is practiſed in *Muſcovy*, by ſending Criminals to *Siberia*, or by the *Danes* lately to their Settlement in *Davis*'s Streight, upon the Coaſt of *Greenland*: But tho' there are few Woods there, yet there is Plenty of Game, Rain-Deer in great Numbers, Hares, Buffaloes, Foxes, and many other Beaſts, whoſe Skins and Furs are valuable; and the Natives there might be employed in Hunting and Fiſhing, and alſo in the Mines, there being a fine Copper Mine already diſcovered on a

Streight or Arm of the Sea in that Country. Whale-fin and Oil may be had in Abundance, from the Number of Whales feen there, as alfo Seals, white Bears, and Sea-Horfes, from the Latitude of 62°. to 66°. and this Trade would increafe by employing the *Efkimaux Indians*, who are already fo dextrous as to ftrike and kill them with Harpoons made of Bone, and muft improve, by furnifhing them with our Harpoons and Lines, and other Implements of Iron, and Fire Arms to fuch as would be reclaimed and civilized, which the Benefit they would have by a free Trade would very much contribute to. We find the North Bay, above the *Welcome*, even to 66°. is in a habitable Climate, having met with the *Efkimaux Indians* in *Wager* River, at *Deer Sound*, and we find in *Europe* many Inhabitants within the Polar Circle, for all to the North of the *Bothnick* Gulph from *Torneo* exceeds that Latitude; all the *Laplands*, *Petzora*, the *Samoyeds*, and all North of *Siberia*, and yet by their Rain-Deer and Sledges they are fo well pleafed with their Country, that they are with Difficulty prevailed with to leave it, fo that fome Advantage may be made of the moft Northerly Parts; tho' few or no *Europeans* fettle there, by civilizing the Natives, and learning them the Ufe of Rain-Deer and Sledges, and *Lapland* Shoes for the Snow, and fhewing them the way to make Stoves where Firing may be had, fo that an Advantage may be had of the coldeft Parts of that Country.

But befides the Advantage to be made of thefe Countries adjoining to the Bay, by opening the Trade, and fettling there, a ftill more confiderable one might be made, by opening a Communication with our prefent Northern Colonies upon that Continent by the Means of the *Canada* Lakes, by forming a Settlement on the River *Conde*, which is navigable into the Lake *Errie*, which is within a fmall Diftance of our Colonies of *Penfylvania* and *Maryland*, and being above the great Fall of *Niagara*, and in the Neighbourhood of the *Iroquefe*, who are at prefent a Barrier againft the *French*, and a fufficient Protection to our Fort and trading Houfe at *Ofwega*, in their Country upon the Lake *Frontenac*, who by that Trade have fecured the Friendfhip of all the Nations around the Lakes of *Huron* and *Errie*. We fhould from thence, in a little Time, fecure the Navigation of thefe great and fine Lakes, and paffing to the Southward, at the fame time, from *Hudfon*'s *Bay* to the Upper Lake, and Lake of *Hurons*, we fhould cut off the Communication

munication betwixt their Colonies of *Canada* and *Miſſiſſippi*, and ſecure the Inland Trade of all that vaſt Continent. I ſhall therefore from *Lahontan*, and other *French* Authors, give a ſhort Account of the Climates and Situations of theſe Lakes, and the Soil of the adjacent Countries. The Upper Lake is ſituated South-weſtward of *Hudſon*'s *Bay*, which may be come at by the *Mooſe* River; from whence, after a Navigation of 100 Leagues, and paſſing ſome Falls, there is a Land Carriage of ſeven Leagues to the River *Mechipikoton*, which falls into that Lake. This Lake is ſituated between 46°. and 49°. of Latitude, and is about 500 Leagues in Circuit, taking in the ſeveral Windings of the Coaſt. It it calm from *May* to *September*, the South Side well ſhelter'd with Bays. There is a large River, call'd *Camanitigoyan*, on the North Side; there are many large Iſlands in it, in which are Elks and wild Aſſes, great Quantities of Sturgeon, Trout, and white Fiſh, and very good Copper is got near the Lake. This Lake is cold for near ſix Months, and is frozen ſometimes ſeveral Leagues from the North Shore.

This falls into *Huron* Lake by the Fall of *St. Mary*, a Sharp of two Leagues. *Huron* Lake is to the South-eaſtward, ſituated betwixt Lat. 43°. and 46°. and is about 400 Leagues in Circuit. The North Side is well ſheltered by many Iſlands full of Woods, one called *Manatoualin* is 20 Leagues long and 10 broad; on the Eaſt Side is the River *Françoiſe*, which is as broad as the *Seine* at *Paris*; it runs 40 Leagues from the Lake *Nepicerini* North-eaſtward, and South-eaſt of it is the Bay of *Toranto*, which is in Depth 25 Leagues and 15th in Breadth; the River *Toranto* falls into it, which is full of Cataracts, from the Head of which they can go by a ſhort Land Carriage to Lake *Frontenac* by the River *Taneoute*. There is nothing remarkable from that Bay to the Streights of *St. Joſeph*, through which it is emptied into Lake *Errie*, on the North-weſt Side below *St. Mary's*, is the Town of *Miſſilimakinac*, ſituated between the Fall and the *Illineſe* Lake. Croſſing the Entrance of this Lake, we come to the Weſt Side of *Huron* Lake, in which is the Bay of *Sakinac*, 16 Leagues deep and 6 broad at the Entrance. The River *Sakinac* falls into it, which is navigable for 60 Leagues, and is as broad as the *Seine* at *Seve* Bridge; this Country abounds with Beavers; from this Bay the

the Coaſt runs South Eaſt to the Streight of *St. Joſeph* already mentioned.

Miſſilimakinac is ſituated in 45°. 30′. within a League of the Entrance into the *Illineſe* Lake, extremely pleaſantly, as well as conveniently for Trade. Here is a great Fiſhery for white Fiſh, the richeſt and beſt Fiſh in the World, being ſo luſcious that all Sauce ſpoils it. The *Indians* here ſow *Indian* Corn, Beans and Peaſe, and have excellent Citruls and Melons.

This Lake is ſituated in an excellent Climate, affording all Things neceſſary for Life, as well as all Fruit and Trees which are for Ornament and Pleaſure, filled with Fiſh, and ſurrounded with Herds of Deer, wild Oxen, Beavers, and other Beaſts of rich Furs, and all Sorts of wild Fowl: In the Northern Side of the Lake the Spring begins with *April* N. S. In the Land the Ice breaks up in *March*, but there is floating Ice until the Beginning of *April*, and the Froſt and Winter ſets in, the latter End of *November*. On the South Side the Winter breaks up the Beginning of *March*, all the Ice being gone before *April*, and the Winter does not begin until the Beginning of *December*. From the *French* River, he ſays, there is a Land Carriage to a River which falls into St. *Laurence* near *Monreal*.

The *Illineſe* Lake begins at *Miſſilimakinac* in Lat. 45°. 30′. and extends Southwards to about 40°. being above 300 Leagues in Circumference, in one of the beſt Climates in the World; it is free from Sands, Shelves, or Rocks, ſurrounded with Woods of the largeſt and beſt Kinds, either for Food, Delight, or Uſe, having moſt excellent Fruit of all Kinds. Forty Leagues Southward of the Entrance, on the Weſt Side of the Lake, is the Bay of *Puants*, 10 Leagues broad at the Entrance, filled with fine Iſlands, and 25 Leagues deep, betwixt Lat. 43°. and 44°. it produces all Sorts of Grain and Fruit almoſt without Culture. The Fall of *Kakalin* is on the River which falls into this Lake; above it is the Nation of *Kikapous*, and above them a ſmall Lake called *Malominis*; upon the Sides of it grows a Kind of wild Oats, from which the Natives get plentiful Crops; above this is the *Outagamis* Fort, and a little higher the Land Carriage to *Ouiſconſic* River, which falls into the *Miſſiſippi*.

There is nothing remarkable from the Bay of *Puants* to the River *Chicakou*, in the South End of the Lake, which has its Source

near the *Illinese* River, to which there is a Land Carriage of ſome Miles. The *Illineſe* River is navigable from about Lat. 39°. to the *Miſſiſſippi* for about 60 Leagues South-weſt. This River runs through one of the moſt delightful Countries in the World, abounding with the moſt delightful Meadows and Woods, which produce every Thing for Delight or Uſe, filled with plenty of Deer, wild Oxen, and wild Fowl of all Kinds; on the Eaſt Side of the Lake is another fine River, called *Oumamis* or *Miamis*, whoſe Source is near the *Huron* Lake. There is nothing remarkable on this Eaſt Coaſt, except the Bay *De L'Ours qui dort*, until you come to its Entrance into the *Huron* Lake.

The Climate upon this Lake is moſt delightful, few Storms met with here. The Bay of *Puanti* is frozen over about the Middle of *December*, and the Froſt is gone again in *February*, the Graſs being well grown in the Meadows by the Middle of *March*. On the South Side of the Lake the River *Chicacou* was frozen over the Beginning of *December*; and upon the 3d of *January* it began to thaw, and was navigable the 24th. The whole Country around this Lake is fill'd with Woods of moſt excellent Timber of the greateſt Growth, which are fill'd with Deer, Buffalo's, *&c.* and all kind of wild Fowl; and rich Mines have been diſcovered upon the *Illineſe* River in its Neighbourhood.

To the Southward of the Lake of *Hurons*, by the Streights of St. *Joſeph*, which are half a League broad, after a Courſe of ſix Leagues, is the Lake of St. *Clair*, which is 12 Leagues in Circuit; and from thence by another Streight of 20 Leagues long, and the ſame Breadth, is the Entrance into the Lake *Errie*. All along this Streight, and around St. *Clair* Lake, are fine Woods full of Harts and Roe-bucks, ſtored with all kinds of Fowl. The Lake *Errie* or *Conti* is 230 Leagues in Circumference, in the moſt excellent Climate in the World, from 40°. to 42°. The Country around it is low and champaign, fill'd with moſt delightful Woods, full of excellent wild Fruit, interſperſed with Meadows filled with ſeveral Sorts of Deer and wild Beeves. Two fine Rivers fall into it from the Southweſt, without Cataracts or rapid Currents. From one of theſe, by a Land-carriage, there is a Paſſage to the *Illineſe* River; and by another to the River *Ouabach* or *Ohio*; which, after a Courſe of near 200 Leagues, 100 of which is three and a half Fathoms deep, enters into the *Miſſiſ-*

ſippi,

ſippi, in about 36°. Latitude, about 80 Leagues below the *Illineſe* River.

This Lake abounds with Sturgeon and white Fiſh, the beſt in the World. It is clear of Rocks, Shelves, or Sands, generally 14 to 15 Fathoms deep, ſeldom or never diſturbed with Storms, and theſe only in the three Winter Months, when they happen. Stags, Roe-bucks, and wild Beeves abound on its Banks, and Turkeys and other wild Fowl in the Woods. On the North Side a narrow Strip of Land runs into the Lake for 15 Leagues. Thirty Leagues to the Eaſtward of this is a ſmall River that riſes near the Bay of *Gamaxaſki* in *Frontenac* Lake. From this River to the Fall of *Niagara* is 30 Leagues; this is ſuppoſed to be the greateſt Fall in this Globe, from its Height and Quantity of Water it diſcharges; the Height was computed formerly above 100 Fathom, but by a late exact Account taken by the *French* in 1721, it is ſaid to be only 26 Fathom perpendicular by a Plumb Line, beſides the Declivity above and below, it being rapid and full of Shelves for ſix Miles below it, before it is again navigable. The Streight above *Niagara* at the Lake is about a League wide. From this to the River *Conde* is 20 Leagues South-weſt; this River runs from the S. E. and is navigable for 60 Leagues without any Cataracts or Falls; and the Natives ſay, that from it to a River which falls into the Ocean, is a Land Carriage of only one League. This muſt be either the *Saſquehana* or *Powtomack*, which fall into the Bay of *Chiſapeak*. There are ſeveral fine Iſlands on the South-weſt of this Lake filled with Fruit Trees of ſeveral Kinds, and there is a Proſpect of rich Mines within 20 Leagues of it upon a Mountain from which Oar has been brought which proved good.

From this ſhort Abſtract of the Lakes, taken from the *French*, who diſcovered them, we muſt conclude that the Countries adjoining to them are the moſt delightful in the World; that in time, by civilizing the Natives, and making them become induſtrious, a very fine Commerce might be carried on through theſe extenſive Lakes, which might be ſecured to us, by making a ſufficient Settlement upon the River *Conde*, where it begins to be navigable, which is but at a ſmall Diſtance from our preſent Colonies of *Maryland* and *Penſilvania*, from whence we might extend that Settlement by Degrees, and by building proper Veſſels there to navigate theſe Lakes, we might gain the whole Navigation and Inland Trade

Trade of Furs, *&c.* from the *French*, the Fall of *Niagara* being a ſufficient Barrier betwixt us and the *French* of *Canada* by Water, and the *Iroqueſe* and Fort at *Oſwega* upon Lake *Frontenac*, an impregnable Barrier by Land, and by the Neighbourhood of our moſt populous Colonies, and Numbers tranſplanting themſelves annually from *Europe*, particularly from *Switzerland* and *Germany* to *Penſilvania*; they would be eaſily induced to ſtrengthen our Settlements upon this River and Lake *Errie*, in ſuch a rich Soil and delightful Climate; and by our ſecuring the Streights of *St. Joſeph*, betwixt *Errie* and *Huron* Lake and the River *Françoiſe*, near the Bay of *Toranto*, we ſhould cut off the *French* at *Canada* from their Communication with theſe Lakes and the *Miſſiſſippi*, and join our Settlements to be made Southward of *Hudſon*'s Bay upon the *Mooſe*, *Nodway* and *Rupert*'s Rivers, which in time would ſecure to us the whole Fur Trade, and make *Canada* inſignificant to the *French*; and alſo by ſettling upon the *Ouabach* or *Ohio* near Lake *Errie*, by having the *Cherokees* and *Chickeſaws* to the Southward, as a Barrier betwixt us and *Louiſiana*, and ſecuring the *Choctaws*, we might ſpread our Commerce beyond the *Miſſiſſippi*; by which Means, the Inland Trade of that vaſt Northern Continent, much greater than *Europe*, would in time be wholly enjoy'd by us in *Britain*, independent of any other *European* Power.

How glorious would it be for us at the ſame time to civilize ſo many Nations, and improve ſo large and ſpacious a Country? by communicating our Conſtitution and Liberties, both civil and religious, to ſuch immenſe Numbers, whoſe Happineſs and Pleaſure would increaſe, at the ſame Time that an Increaſe of Wealth and Power would be added to *Britain*.

There is at preſent a Beginning of this Scheme by the Zeal of Mr. *Barclay*, who is inſtructing and civilizing the *Mowhawks* among the *Iroqueſe*, who from a warlike Nation have embarked in Trade, and entered into Alliances with all the Nations around the Lakes *Huron* and *Errie*, and to the Weſtward as far as the *Miſſiſſippi*, which is firmly eſtabliſhed by the Gain they make by the Trade the *Engliſh* from *New-York* have fixed at *Oſwega* in their Country, upon equitable Terms with all the *Indians*, who come now from a great Diſtance to trade at that Town, *Indians* coming now to trade there whoſe Names were never before known to the *Engliſh*. This therefore ſeems to be the critical Time to begin this

K Settle-

Settlement on the Banks of *Conde* River. If there be a War with *France*, as we are at a great Expence to ſave the Liberties of *Europe*, and ſupport the Houſe of *Auſtria*, ſince we can have nothing in *Europe* beneficial for us, in caſe we are ſuccesſful at the Concluſion of the War, we ought to ſtipulate for ſomething advantageous in *America*; and the leaſt we ought to claim is our Right to the *American* Lakes, and ſecuring the Navigation of them. The *French* have at preſent two little Forts, of about thirty Men in each, at *Niagara*, and the Streights of St. *Joſeph*, and a few Men at *Miſſilimakinac*, and at the Bottom of the *Illineſe* Lake; theſe we ought to have from them, either by Force or Treaty, which would ſecure the Inland-Trade to us, and prevent their future Incroachments either there or in *Hudſon*'s *Bay*; and to do this effectually, would be to make this Settlement near the Lake *Errie*, which may be done at little or no Expence, conſidering our preſent Barrier, and Alliance and Trade with the Natives; and when our Troops are diſbanded, ſome of them may be ſent over upon Half-pay to fix in proper Places, and make good our Poſſeſſions, which would be a fine Retreat to our Soldiers, who can't ſo eaſily, after being diſbanded, bring themſelves again to hard Labour, after being ſo long diſuſed to it.

By theſe Settlements, and thoſe adjoining to *Hudſon*'s *Bay*, and by opening the Trade in the Bay, many Thouſands more would be employed in Trade, and a much greater Vent would be opened for our Manufactures; whereas all the Gain we have at preſent, whilſt the Trade is confined to the Company, is the Employment of 120 Men in all their Factories, and two or three Ships in that Trade, mann'd perhaps with 120 Men in time of War, to enrich nine or ten Merchants at their Country's Expence; at the ſame time betraying the Nation, by allowing the *French* to encroach upon us at the Bottom of the Bay, having given up by that means the greateſt Part of their Trade there to the *French*; it is therefore humbly ſubmitted to the Government, whether it is not juſt, as well as prudent, to open that Trade to all the *Britiſh* Merchants, and reſume, at the ſame time, the Charter ſo far, as to take from them all thoſe Lands they have not reclaimed or occupied after 70 Years Poſſeſſion, leaving them only their Factories, and ſuch Lands as they have reclaimed adjoining to them; and to give Grants as uſual in other Colonies, to all who ſhall go over to trade and make Settle-

Settlements in the Country; for no Grant was ever intended to be made to them, to enable them to prevent other Subjects of *Britain* from planting thoſe Countries, which they themſelves would not plant or occupy; for ſuch a Power, inſtead of being beneficial, would be the greateſt Prejudice to *Britain*, and is become a general Law in all the Colonies, that thoſe who take Grants of Land, and don't plant them in a reaſonable, limited Time, forfeit their Right to thoſe Lands, and a new Grant is made out to ſuch others as ſhall plant and improve them; and if this Grant be not immediately reſumed ſo far, and the Trade laid open, and ſome Force be not ſent to ſecure our Southern Poſſeſſions in the Bay by the Government, in caſe there ſhould be a *French* War, we ſhall ſee the *French* immediately diſpoſſeſs the Company of all their Factories but *Churchill*, and all theſe Countries, and that Trade, will be in the Poſſeſſion of the *French*.

To the making ſuch Settlements ſome Objections have been made by the Friends of the Company; as the great Difficulty of getting People to go to ſettle and plant in ſo cold a Country, and the Difficulty and Danger attending the making Settlements higher up upon the Rivers, and navigating them, they being ſo full of Falls and Rapids, that can only be navigated by the Natives in ſmall Canoes made of Birch Bark, which can't contain above two Men with any Cargo; and in theſe they are often overſet, and are in danger of being drowned, and of ſpoiling their Goods; that they are often obliged to carry their Canoes and Cargo from Place to Place, which obſtructs greatly, and delays the Navigation, and that ſcarce 5 Men out of 120, which the Company now have in the Bay, will venture themſelves in, or can conduct ſuch Canoes, without imminent Danger of being drowned, and conſequently theſe Hardſhips and Difficulties will counterbalance the Profit to be made of ſettling higher up in the Country, upon the Rivers in pleaſanter and warmer Climates.

To this I anſwer, that by the Accounts already given here of theſe Climates and Countries by impartial Perſons, who don't want to diſguiſe the Truth, it appears that the Cold is tolerable even at theſe diſadvantageous Settlements at preſent in the Bay, and that upon paſſing only five or ſix Leagues up the Rivers into the Country, the Climate is ſo altered, as to be equal to thoſe of the ſame Latitudes in *Europe*; and that theſe prodigious Accounts of the Ef-

fects of Cold are calculated only to ferve the Company, in order to prevent People from going there to fettle, and encroach upon the Company's Monopoly of Trade.

As to the Difficulty they make about navigating thefe Rivers in thofe fmall Canoes, and the fmall Number of thofe employed by the Company, who will venture in them, or can conduct them; I anfwer, that their Servants, being at prefent no Gainers by Trade, won't endeavour to learn to navigate thefe Canoes, where there is any Rifque, and Care neceffary to prevent the Danger: Befides, the Company allows them no Time to learn, by confining them to their Factories whilft the *Indian* Trade continues, and the Navigation is open; and at other Times keep them employed in cutting Wood for Firing, bringing it home, and in fhooting, fifhing, and digging in their Gardens, to fupply themfelves with Provifions, to leffen the Company's Expence; fo that they are allowed no Time to learn to navigate thefe Boats, or to go up the Rivers to obferve the Soil and Climate, or what Improvements might be made in the Country: But if they were Mafters of their own Time, and could advance their Wealth by Trade, and found a confiderable Profit to arife to them by their Dexterity in managing thefe Canoes, and the great Pleafure and Satisfaction they would have, by living in a fine Climate among thefe Lakes and Rivers, they would be as enterprizing and dexterous as the *Cureur de Bois*, and be as able to navigate among thefe Water-falls as the *French*. Neither is it impracticable to prevent even thefe Canoes from overfetting, by Outlagers or blown Bladders fixed to their Sides; or other Kinds of Boats may be ufed, fuch as are made at *Torneo*, in *Sweden*, upon the Rivers falling into the *Bothnick* Gulph; and *Laplanders* might be prevailed upon to go there to teach them how to make and manage thefe Boats, and train up Rain-Deer to draw in Sleds in Winter, and alfo to ufe *Lapland* Shoes, which are better than thofe ufed in *America*.

If the Trade was once made free, the Profit made upon it would induce many to go and fettle upon thefe Rivers, when not only Horfes and other Conveniencies would be had near thefe Water-falls to affift the Land Carriage in Summer, but alfo Horfes and Rain-Deer to draw their Sleds in Winter as in *Ruffia*, which is almoft as cheap a Carriage as by Water, when the proper Roads are made through the Woods; fo that Objection muft be of no

 Force

Force to prevent our opening the Trade, and ſettling theſe Countries.

But ſuppoſing the worſt, that we could not manage theſe Canoes, that could not prevent our ſettling to Advantage upon theſe Rivers and Lakes above the Falls; for the Natives might ſtill be our Carriers in navigating thoſe dangerous Places, and taking our Goods from one Settlement to another, whilſt we ſhould be employed in Navigation and Trade among the Lakes and Rivers where there are no Falls in larger Veſſels, and puſh our Commerce Southward into better Climates and richer Soils, and put the Natives upon Improvements in Trade, by civilizing and inſtructing them in building convenient Houſes, and aſſociating in Towns, making Gardens, and tilling their Lands, providing them with Horſes and tame Cattle, and Fowl for their Uſe, and proper Tools, which our Trade would furniſh them with.

Another Objection is, that it is a difficult and dangerous Navigation into the Bay, and the Trade is not worth the Riſque.

To this I anſwer, that the Navigation is not ſo dangerous as it is apprehended to be, but appears to be more ſo by the Inſinuations and Report of the Company and their Friends, who give it out in order to deter others from venturing and interfering in their Trade; and for that Reaſon they oblige their Captains, under a Penalty, not to publiſh any Charts of the Bay and Streight. Captain *Middleton*, who was in their Service, made above twenty Voyages to different Parts of the Bay, and never loſt a Ship, nor had any Accident in theſe Voyages; nor have I heard that the Company, in about 23 Years, have loſt any Ships in that Trade but two, and the Men and Cargo were ſaved by Captain *Middleton*. Where Captains are careful in the Ice, there is not much Danger; it is of great Advantage to them that there is no Night at that Seaſon they enter the Bay where the Quantity of Ice is greateſt; and when they return in *September*, or even in *October*, all the Ice is in a manner diſſolved, or paſſed out of the Streight into the Ocean, and none ſeen that can obſtruct their Paſſage.

It is probable, that during the whole Winter, from *October* to *March*, there is no Ice in the Streight to obſtruct their Paſſage into, or out of, the Bay; for a Ship which chanced to be cloſed up with Ice in an Inlet, by the breaking of the Ice got out, and came through the Streights at *Chriſtmas*, without finding any Ice in the

Streight

Streight to prevent her Paſſage: For the Ice which is formed in Bays and Rivers in Winter, does not break up, and get into the Channel or Streight, until it begins to thaw upon the Shores in *March* and *April*; at which Time it is carried by the Winds and Tide into the Streight, and obſtructs the Paſſage in *May*, and Part of *June*, until it is diſſolved; yet even then good Pilots know how to avoid it, and get into the Eddy Tide, out of the Current, where the Ice is more open, and not drove together by the Winds and Current, as it is in the Channel; but theſe Difficulties would leſſen every Day, if the Trade were open'd, and the Voyages were more frequent by the greater Number of Ships, which would make many more experienced Pilots; and as there is now a more accurate Chart publiſhed of the Streight and Bay by Captain *Middleton*, with the Iſlands, Soundings, Tides and Variation, the Navigation will become leſs dangerous daily, and Coves and Places of Shelter for Ships will be found out by the Numbers of Ships which would then paſs, and be trading in theſe Seas, which are now unknown.

I therefore apprehend, that the Danger from the Ice is more in Imagination than Reality, when Care and Judgment are employed; for Ships are moſtly incloſed in Ice in calm Weather and Fogs, when the Ice prevents the Motion of the Sea; ſtormy Weather diſperſes and breaks the Ice and blows off the Fogs, and Ships keep a good Offing from the Ice, unleſs they get under the Lee of a large Iſland of Ice, and then they faſten to it and drive along with it, whilſt the ſmaller Ice to Leeward is drove from them by the Wind; and the large Iſlands being many Fathoms deep in the Water, come on Ground before the Ships are in Danger of being forced on Shore in ſhallow Water.

The greateſt Danger and Delay from the Ice is in the Entrance into the Streight; for the firſt 40 Leagues from thence the Quantity is leſs, and they paſs on with leſs Difficulty, and after getting into the Bay, the North-weſt Side is freeſt from Ice, the Bottom of the Bay is full of low flat Ice, which is all diſſolved in the latter End of Summer.

Upon the whole, except two Ships which were loſt in King *William*'s Reign, and a *French* Ship, after an Engagement with our Ships, when they attack'd Fort *Nelſon*, I have heard of none but the Ships already mentioned which have been loſt in that Voyage. The two Ships which went with *Barlow* in 1719 to find

 the

the North-weſt Paſſage, contrary to the Inclinations of the Company, if they did not make the Paſſage, were probably in the Winter ſurprized by the Natives, and were not loſt in the Ice; for they ſay that the Natives in about Lat. 63°. where they ſuppoſe they were loſt, are ſhyer ſince that Time in trading with the Company's Sloops, which they apprehend to be from a Conſciouſneſs of Guilt, fearing that it might be known, and they ſhould be puniſhed for it.

Since therefore the greateſt Danger from the Ice is in paſſing the Streight, and ſo few Accidents have happened in ſo many Years, the Navigation, I think, can't be call'd dangerous, tho' it has been generally ſo apprehended; and not equal to the Whale Fiſhers who go annually to *Spitzberg* and *Davis*'s Streights, to Lat. 78°. and 80°. without any Objection to that Navigation, either by the *Dutch*, *Hamburgers*, *Danes*, *Biſcayners*, or *Engliſh*.

I think therefore it appears, that upon opening the Trade, and ſettling in the Bay, a very great Improvement may be made to our Trade, by the Increaſe of our Fur Trade, and from the Mines; and beneficial Whale Fiſhery, which may be improved and carried on there by the *Indians*; and the whole may be had without Danger or Difficulty, altho' no Paſſage ſhould be found to the Weſtern Ocean; but if there be a Probability of that Paſſage, and the Preſumptions are now vaſtly ſtronger, ſince the Diſcoveries lately made by the Ships under Captain *Middleton*'s Command, and the Advantages would be ſo very great to our Trade, in caſe a ſafe Paſſage ſhould be found, I ſhall here give a ſhort Abſtract of the Journal which he has been pleaſed to give us, wherein, tho' many material Obſervations have been concealed and omitted, and others have been miſrepreſented; and the chief Part of the Coaſt, where the greateſt Hopes was of a Paſſage, was entirely ſlighted and neglected by him, Part being paſſed in the Night, and the Remainder ſailed along in hazy Weather, at five, ſix, and eight Leagues Diſtance, ſo as to make no Diſcovery of thoſe broken Lands, of which that whole Coaſt conſiſts; which ſeems plainly done with a Deſign in him to compliment the Company at the publick Expence, that he might have it in his Power to gratify them by concealing the Diſcovery; and thought from his Character of being an experienced Sailor, no other after him would pretend to look after it for the future, which would quiet the Company

pany in the Poffeffion of their darling Monopoly in the Bay, for which, no doubt, he had ftrong Motives to induce him to flight it, they having offered him before he went the Voyage *l.* 5000 not to go, or to flight the Difcovery, by going to *Davis*'s Streights, or any other Way but where he was directed, as he has own'd to feveral Perfons; yet notwithftanding all his Art in concealing a great deal, and difguifing more, in his Journal, enough is difcovered in it, to fhew he was in the Paffage, and that if his Inclination had been as good as his Ability, he could have made a confiderable Progrefs in the Difcovery of the Paffage laft Voyage; and after obferving upon his own Journal, I fhall add what further Remarks have been made in the Voyage by fome Officers who were on board him, and Objections to his Conduct upon the Voyage, fo far as related to his concealing and flighting the Difcovery; and by comparing his Journal and their Obfervations, with the Accounts formerly given by *Button*, *Fox*, *Scroggs* and *Norton*, fhall fhew that the Prefumptions now of their being a fafe Paffage to the Weftern Ocean of *America*, are as ftrong as well can be, without a Demonftration by an actual paffing it.

He could not get out fooner than the 1ft of *July* from *Churchill* River in Lat. 58°. 56′. to fearch for the Paffage; on the 3d at five in the Morning he faw three Iflands in Lat. 61°. 40′. on the 4th he faw Brook *Cobham* in Lat. 63°. Long. 93°. 40′. Weft from *London*, the Variation there was 21°. Weft. This Ifland had much Snow upon it; on the 6th in the Morning he faw a Head-land in Lat. 63°. 20′. Long. 93°. Weft; Soundings from 35 to 72 Fathoms; at five the Current fet N. N. E. 2 Knots 2 Fathoms; the Tide flowed from N. E. by N. Variation 30°. Weft; a W. by N. Moon made high Water; the 8th he was in Lat. 63°. 39′. faw no Whales or other Fifh yet, except one white Whale as big as a Grampus, and fome Seals; much Ice North of them, clofe in Shore for feveral Leagues; Depth 60 to 90 Fathoms; Land 7 or 8 Leagues N. W. 10th in Lat. 64°. 51′. Long. 88°. 34′. Weft, the *Welcome* here 11 or 12 Leagues wide, the Eaft Coaft a low flat Coaft, the whole *Welcome* full of Ice; they filled frefh Water off the Ice; clos'd in the Ice until the 12th; the 13th he got through the Ice to Northwards of Cape *Dobbs*, a new difcovered Head-land, on the N. W. Side of the *Welcome*, in Lat. 65°. 10′. Long. 86°. 6′. Weft. faw a fair Opening N. W. of it; failed into this Opening or River to fecure the Ships from the Ice, until it difperfed

diſperſed in the *Welcome*. The Entrance of this River 6 or 8 Miles wide for 4 or 5 Miles. Four Leagues higher it was 4 to 5 Leagues wide; he anchored on the North Side above ſome Iſlands in 34 Fathoms; the Tide in the Narrow flowed 5 Miles an Hour; not ſo ſtrict further up; much Ice came down with the Ebb; the Soundings, as they went up, were from 14 to 44 Fathoms in the Middle of the Channel. Next Morning ſeveral of the *Eſki-maux Indians* came on board, who had nothing to exchange but their old Cloaths and 20 Gallons of Train Oil; he gave them ſe-veral Toys; he went higher about four Miles, above ſome Iſlands, and anchored in a Sound betwixt them and the North Shore, in an Eddy Tide, to be out of the Way of the driving Ice, which went in and out with the Tide, and anchored in 16 Fathoms; this he called *Savage Sound*; the River above and below full of Ice; the 15th he ſent up the Lieutenant with nine Men well armed, with Proviſions for 48 Hours, in the eight oar'd Boat, to try the River, who returned on the 17th; he had been up as far as the Ice would permit, it being faſt above from Side to Side; he found the Depth above from 70 to 80 Fathoms. The 16th the Captain went aſhore on ſome Iſlands, and found them quite bare, except ſome ſhort Graſs, and Moſs in the Valleys, and a little Sorrel and Scurvy-Graſs above High-water Mark. They ſet the Fiſhing Nets but got no Fiſh; many of his Men relapſed in the Scurvy, above half not ſerviceable. The Tide at the Mouth of the River on Change Days flows five Hours, and riſes from 10 to 15 Feet, Variation 35°. Weſt; where the Lieutenant was, it flowed from the Southward, and roſe 13 Foot at Neap Tide. The Northern *Indians* he took from *Churchill* knew nothing of the Country; 18th got the Ships into a ſafe Cove, and moor'd in nine Fathoms and a half: The Captain went up the River in the Morning with eight Men and the two *Indians*, and by eight at Night was got up 15 Miles: He found the Tide flowed 12 Feet, and a Weſt Moon made high Water; the Tide flowed from S. S. E. the *Indians* killed a Deer; they heard an uncommon cry-ing in the Night, generally made by Savages when they ſee Stran-gers; 19th by two in the Morning went five Miles higher, and got into a ſmall River or Sound, ſix or ſeven Miles wide, but how far it went up they knew not; the main River was there ſix or ſe-ven Leagues wide, but ſo full of Ice they could not go much far-

 ther;

ther; the Lands on both Sides very high; he went upon one of the higheſt Mountains 24 Miles above *Savage Cove*, where the Ships lay, from whence he could ſee where the Ships lay, and about 8 or 10 Leagues higher up than the Place he was at; he obſerved the River run N. by W. by the Compaſs, which, Variation allowed, was to Weſtward of N. W. but it grew narrower in its Courſe upwards, and was full of Ice; the 20th, at eight in the Evening, he returned on board with ſix Deer, which the *Indians* had ſhot whilſt he was on Shore: He called that Place *Deer Sound*; the Land is very mountainous and barren, with Rocks of the Marble Kind; in the Vales a great many Lakes, with ſome Graſs, and Numbers of large Deer, as big as a ſmall Horſe, 12 or 13 Hands high; upon Iſlands not half a Mile in Circuit they generally ſaw a ſmall Herd. 21ſt he went down the River, which was ſtill full of Ice; when he was within 4 Miles of the Entrance, he got upon a high Hill, and ſaw the *Welcome* ſtill full of Ice from Side to Side. 22d the Ice very thick in the River above and below, and more drives in every Tide, if the Wind comes from the *Welcome*; he ſent the Lieutenant with the ſix oar'd Boat up the River. 24th more Ice in the River than ever; no ſending a Boat downwards. 25th Lieutenant returned, after having been 48 Hours ſounding among the Iſlands near *Deer Sound*; he found the River full of Ice; he brought three Deer with him. 26th ſent the Lieutenant and Maſter down to ſee if the Ice was clearer below, and in the *Welcome*; *Savage Sound* is in Long. 89°. 28′. Weſt, Variation 35°. Weſt; the Entrance of *Wager* River is in Lat. 65°. 23′. *Deer Sound* 65°. 50′. the Courſe from *Savage Bay* is N. W. by Compaſs, which, Variation allowed, is W. by N. 27th Lieutenant returned, having been carried out by the Ice and Tide ſix or ſeven Leagues, and found the River below quite choak'd up with Ice, but thinner when they got into the *Welcome*. 28th at one in the Afternoon, the Lieutenant and Maſter went up the River, to try if they could find out any other Way into the *Welcome* beſides that they came in at, on Account they had ſeen many black Whales, and other Fiſh, the Time they were up laſt, and none were ſeen where the Ships lay, nor any where below; he was likewiſe ordered to try *Deer Sound*, and every Opening, to find whether the Tide came in any other Way, than the Way they came in at, this he had Time to do, until the

the Ice cleared in the Mouth of the River and *Welcome*. 29th he ſent the Boat with eight ſick Men, and ſeveral that were lame with the Scurvy, to an Iſland about five Miles off, it having Plenty of Sorrel and Scurvy-Graſs upon it, and left with them Tenting and Neceſſaries; the Tide flowed 12 Fathom 6 Inches; the Captain went up one of the higheſt Hills, and found the River full of Ice below, but ſomething thinner above. 30th he perceived the Ice was all faſt below them, and for eight or ten Miles above them, without the Iſlands; but pretty clear without the Cove. 31ſt Abundance of Ice drove in from the *Welcome*, and almoſt filled the Bay without them. The 1ſt of *Auguſt* the Lieutenant and Maſter came on board, having been four Days out, who ſaid they had been 10 or 12 Leagues above *Deer Sound*; they ſaw a great many black Whales of the Whale-bone Kind; they tried every Opening they ſaw, and conſtantly found the Tide of Flood came from the Eaſtward, or in at the Mouth of the River *Wager*, 2d they unmóored and warp'd out into *Savage Sound*, and on the 4th by 10th at Night got out of the River, the Ebb carrying them out at the Rate of five Miles in an Hour, being clear of Ice until they got out; it being almoſt calm put the Pinnace a Head. and tow'd and row'd with the Ship's Oars. They were then in 65°. 38'. and Long. 87°. 7'. Weſt Variation 38°. Here they entered a new Streight N. E. of *Wager* River, 13 Leagues wide; the Entrance of *Wager* River is in Lat. 65°. 24'. Long. 88°. 37'. the 5th they were in Lat. 66°. 14. Long. 86°. 28'. Weſt; the Strait there was about 8 or 9 Leagues wide, failing among Ice; the S. E. Coaſt was low and ſhingly 7 Leagues long; at the N. E. End of the Beach was a mountainous ragged Land like Part of *Hudſon's Streight*; good Soundings here from 25 to 44 Fathoms, Variation 40°. Weſt; the Tide comes from E. by N. by the Compaſs; the Tide runs very ſtrong here with Eddies and Whirlings. 6th tried the Tide, and found it came from the E. by S. the Point of the Beach at two was diſtant four or five Miles; at half an Hour paſt two ſent the Lieutenant aſhore with the ſix oar'd Boat to try the Tide, and found it had ebbed two Feet, and the Flood came from the Eaſtward; at three made a Signal for the Boat to come on board; at four ſaw a fair Cape or Head-land on the Weſt or North Shore, bearing from them S. W. half S. ſix or ſeven Leagues, the Land trenching away from E. by N. to N. by W. making eight

 Points

Points of the Compaſs; this gave them Joy, believing it the North Point of *America*, and therefore he called it *Cape Hope*; they work'd round it through much ſtraggling Ice all Night; in the Morning when the Sun clear'd away the Haze, they ſaw Land all round, quite from the low Beach to the Weſtward of the North, meeting the Weſt Shore, and made a deep Bay, but to make ſure they kept their Courſe to the Cod of it, until two next Afternoon, when every one ſaw plainly it was a Bay, and they could not go above ſix or eight Miles farther; ſo trying the Tide ſeveral Times, and finding it always ſlack Water, they found they had overſhot the Opening where the Tide came in at, from the Eaſtward, the Variation here was 50°. This Bay at the Bottom was ſix or ſeven Leagues wide from Side to Side; very high Land from thence to the frozen Streight Eaſtward of them; Soundings from 50 to 105 Fathom; they ſailed Eaſtward out of the Bay, much Ice to Eaſtward. The 8th at 10 in the Morning the Captain went on Shore with the Boat, taking the Gunner, Carpenter, and his Clerk with him, to try if he could find from whence the Flood came in at to this Streight or Bay. At Noon *Cape Hope* bore N. half E. five or ſix Leagues; the Beach W. S. W. four Leagues; the Entrance of the frozen Streight amongſt the Iſlands on the Eaſt Side, bore Eaſt two Leagues; at four the Middle of the frozen Streight bore E. S. E. three Leagues; at half an Hour paſt nine at Night he returned on board; he had travelled about 15 Miles to the higheſt Mountain that overlooked the Streight, and Eaſt Bay on the other Side, and ſaw the Paſſage the Flood came in at; the narroweſt Part of this Streight is four or five Leagues, and five, ſix or ſeven in the broadeſt, almoſt full of large and ſmall Iſlands, and in length about 16 or 18 Leagues; it ſtretches S. E. round to the South and to the Weſtward; it was full of Ice not broke up, all faſt to both Shores, and Iſlands therein; he ſaw very high Land, about 15 or 20 Leagues Southward of the Place he was at, which he took to run towards Cape *Comfort*, and the Bay betwixt that and *Weſton*'s *Portland*, being Part of *Hudſon*'s North Bay; the Ice being not yet broke up, it was reſolved in Council to try the other Side of the *Welcome*, from Cape *Dobbs* to Brook *Cobham*, to know if there was any Opening there, and then return to *England*.

The

The 9th at two in the Morning they bore away; at three founded 35 Fathom within a Mile of the Beach, fix Leagues to *Cape Hope*, and three to the Beach Point; they failed along the South-eaft Shore at three Leagues Diftance; there being much Ice to Weftward, almoft one third over; at four in the Afternoon Cape *Dobbs* bore N. W. three fourths W. by Compafs fix Leagues; at 10 founded 50 Fathom; at 12, 60 to 65. The 10th at four in the Morning 43 to 25 Fathom, five Leagues from the Weft Land at eight; 66 to 70 Fathom; then in Lat. 64°. 10′. Long. 88°. 56′. Weft; the *Welcome* here 16 or 18 Leagues wide; the extreme Part of the S. E. Shore ftill in Sight, bore from S. to S. E. by E. diftant fix or feven Leagues. The 11th at four in the Morning 45 to 35 Fathom, the North Shore from N. E. to N. N. W. four or five Leagues diftant, then in about Lat. 64°. and Long. 90°. 53′. near the Head-land; they kept as near as they could to the Shore, to fee if there was any Opening into the Land, 25 to 35 Fathoms; continued failing in Sight of the North Shore from *Cape Hope*; at four in the Afternoon haul'd off from the Shore to deepen the Water; at fix, 34 to 28 Fathom; at eight, 30 to 40; then lay by until Day-light; Soundings all Night from 44 to 60 Fathom. At four on the 12th made fail; at fix, ftood in with the Head-land 9 or 10 Leagues to Eaftward of Brook *Cobham*; it bore then from them N. W. by N. 5 or 6 Leagues; founded 60 to 49 Fathom; at ten 49 to 9 Fathom, ftanding in to the Head-land; at twelve haul'd off to deepen the Water, they were then in Lat. 63°. 14′. and Long. 92°. 25′. W. He fays he found in coafting along the Shore of the *Welcome*, from the frozen Streight to this Place, that it was all a Main-land, tho' there are feveral fmall Iflands and deep Bays; this Head-land, and the other in Lat. 64°. makes a deep Bay; in their Paffage out they did not fee the Bottom of it, as they did upon their Return; and by keeping clofe along Shore, they faw many large black Whales of the right Whale-bone Kind.

They had from 20 to 40 Fathom off Brook *Cobham*, which at four in the Afternoon was W. N. W. 4 Leagues diftant. The 13th he fent afhore to fee if he could water the Ships; the two Northern *Indians* went afhore in the Boat; the Ifland is 3 Leagues from the Main, 7 Leagues long and three broad, all of hard white Stone like Marble. The 14th the Lieutenant returned with the

 Boat,

Boat, and brought a Deer the *Indians* had ſhot, and a white Bear; they ſaw ſeveral Swans and Ducks.

The 15th ſent the Boat for more Water with the two Northern *Indians*, who were deſirous of being left near their own Country, he gave them a ſmall Boat, which he taught them the Uſe of, and loaded it with Powder, Shot, Proviſions, Hatchets, Tobacco, and Toys, of every Kind he had on board. The Afternoon the Boat returned on board, and brought an Account, that by Marks left on the Shore, the Tide flows ſometimes there 22 Feet; they left the two *Indians* aſhore, who deſigned to go to the Main-land the firſt Opportunity; the other *Indian* being deſirous of ſeeing *England*, he brought with him, and the ſame Day bore away for *England*.

If nothing more was known or diſcovered by this Voyage, than what is here mentioned in this Journal, yet it even appears from it, and by the former Accounts given by *Button*, *Fox*, *Scroggs*, and *Norton*, that there are ſtrong Preſumptions of a Paſſage, of which I ſhall give a ſhort Abſtract, with Obſervations upon this Journal, as here given in by Captain *Middleton*. But when I ſhall take Notice of what more has been diſcovered in this Voyage, which has been induſtriouſly concealed by him, and that he not only ſlighted examining the material Parts of the Coaſt, and the Direction and Height of the Tide, where the greateſt Probability was of a Paſſage by all former Accounts; but even avoided the Coaſt, and paſſed great Part in the Night, and has given falſe Accounts of the Courſe of the Tides, and has made an imaginary frozen Streight, in order to bring a Tide of Flood through it to ſupport the falſe Facts he has laid down in his Journal, and publiſhed in his Chart of the Courſe of the Tide, from thence to conclude, that there is no Paſſage; and when a Paſſage or Streight free from Ice, leading to the W. S. W. four or five Leagues wide was diſcovered, and reported to him under the Lieutenant and Maſter's Hand, he would not purſue it, but ſail'd out of the Streight N. E. a Courſe the Reverſe of what he ſhould have taken, and followed the Tide contrary to his Inſtructions; and afterwards, when a Tide of Flood was diſcovered coming from the Weſtward at *Marble Iſland*, through an Open on the Weſtern Shore, he not only ſlighted looking into it, but even refuſed the Lieutenant when he deſired to try that Opening, and diſcouraged all thoſe who were on board

him, who were of Opinion that there was a Paſſage, and were inquiſitive and deſirous of having it found. When all this is ſhewn, it will not only increaſe the Probability of there being a Paſſage, but alſo confirm the Belief, that undue Influence has been made Uſe of by the Company, to induce the Captain to conceal the Paſſage and ſtifle the Diſcovery, and publiſh a falſe Chart to fix it, and deter any others from attempting it for the future.

In order to make all this plain, I ſhall firſt give a ſhort Abſtract from *Button*, *Fox*, and *Scroggs*, of what they obſerved, and then reaſon from their Accounts, and the Facts he himſelf has allowed in his Journal, before I mention what he has concealed, avoided and falſified in it.

It appears from *Button*'s Journal, who was the firſt we have recorded to have been upon that Coaſt in 1613, after wintering in *Port Nelſon*, that he ſaw a Head-land when in 62°. 42′. North Latitude, bearing from him N. E. by E. 8 or 9 Leagues, and another Head-land in about Lat. 64°. which are the ſame mentioned in this Journal; he was then forced by a Storm into Lat. 65°. and fell in with the Eaſt Land; this Place he called *Ne Ultra*, not knowing whether it was a Bay or Inlet. He was afterwards forced by ſtormy Weather to the Southward, without making any other Diſcovery, only leaving it doubtful. He was here on the 28th of *July*, but ſaw neither Ice nor Snow upon the Coaſt at that Time, but ſaid all he ſaw was a broken Land and Iſlands upon the North-weſt Coaſt.

Fox was the next, who was there in 1632. The firſt Land he made, after paſſing *Cary*'s *Swan's Neſt*, was in Lat. 64°. 10′. which he called Sir *Thomas Roe*'s *Welcome*, but was the ſame *Button* called *Ne Ultra*. This, he ſays, was an Iſland, a high, broken Land. He had fine, clear Weather, an open Sea, free from Ice, no Snow on the Land, but a bold, ragged Coaſt, like Head-lands upon the Ocean, with Tangle and Rock-weed, and great Store of Fiſh leaping. Here the Tide roſe 4 Fathom. He ſailed from thence South-weſt, and in Lat. 63°. 37′. ſaw another Head-land to Southward of him, and ſmall Iſlands and broken Land upon the Main, with many Fiſh and Seals, and one black Whale. He ſailed to Southward, and came to *Brook Cobham*, an Iſland in Lat. 63°. where he ſaw two Whales, and betwixt that Iſland and the Main his Men

ſaw

ſaw 40 Whales. This was the 27th of *July*. He ſailed thence to the Southward.

Scroggs was the third that was there. He ſailed from *Churchill* River on the 22d of *June* 1722. In Lat. 62°. he traded with the Natives for Whale-fin and Sea-horſe Teeth. On the 9th of *July* he was drove in hazy, thick Weather, to Lat. 64°. 56′. where he anchored in 12 Fathoms. When it cleared up, he found himſelf within 3 Leagues of the North Shore. The Head-land which bore E. N. E. from him, he called *Whalebone Point*. He ſaw at the ſame time ſeveral Iſlands bearing from S. W. by W. to S. W. by S. which, Variation allowed, was from S. W. by S. to S. S. W. He ſaw Land from South up to the Weſt; the *Welcome* was very high Land, as high as any in *Hudſon*'s Streight. The Southermoſt Iſland he called Cape *Fullerton*. Here he ſaw many black Whales, and ſome white. He ſent his Boat on Shore, they ſaw many Deer, Geeſe, Ducks, *&c.* He ſaid it flowed there 5 Fathoms upon his Lead-line, he having but 7 Fathom at low Water, and 12 at high Water. He had two Northern *Indians* with him, who had wintered at *Churchill*, and told him of a rich Copper Mine ſomewhere in that Country, upon the Shore, near the Surface of the Earth, and they could direct the Sloop ſo near it, as to lay her Side to it, and be ſoon loaden with it; they had brought ſome Pieces of Copper from it to *Churchill*, that made it evident there was a Mine thereabouts. They had ſketched out the Country with Charcoal upon a Skin of Parchment before they left *Churchill*, and ſo far as they went it agreed very well. One of the *Indians* deſired him to leave him, ſaying, he was within three or four Days Journey of his own Country, but he would not let him go. He ſaid he was up in the Cod of the Bay, and that there was a Bar there; but his Men ſaid he was 10 Leagues from what he called a Bar. He ſailed out S. E. and on the 15th croſſed to the Weſt Side of the *Welcome*, in Lat. 64°. 15′. In Lat. 64°. 8′. he ſaw again many Whales, but ſaw no Ice when he was there. The Land from *Whalebone Point* fell off to the Southward of the Weſt, and the Men who went aſhore, ſaid they ſaw nothing to prevent their going farther. They had Soundings there from 40 to 70 Fathoms.

Captain *Norton*, late Governor of *Churchill*, was then with him, and confirmed this Account, and that the Tide roſe 5 Fathom; and ſaid that he was on Shore, on the Top of a Mountain, and ſaw

ſaw the Land fall away to the Southward of a Weſt, and nothing to prevent their going further.

Captain *Middleton* in his Journal confirms all theſe Head-lands in the very ſame Places they mention them, with high, ragged Lands and Iſlands off the Main, and ſaw many Whales at the ſame Head-land *Fox* had ſeen one. Upon his going out it appears he kept at a great Diſtance from the Weſt Shore, ſo as ſcarce to deſcry it, under Pretence of Ice; and upon his Return, tho' there was then no Ice, it appears he was 6 Leagues to Eaſtward of Cape *Dobbs*, paſſed *Whalebone Point* in the Night, without ſeeing that Coaſt, and was 5 or 6 Leagues to Eaſtward of Cape *Fullerton* next Morning, as it appears from his Logg-book; he afterwards coaſted down the Bay Southward of that Cape. But by the Logg-book it appears he was 7 or 8 Leagues off the Coaſt, and generally ſo hazy, as only barely to deſcry Mountains, as it were, in the Clouds, never once ſending his Boat on Shore to try the Tide, or look out for Inlets, until he arrived at the Marble Iſland he called *Brook Cobham*; ſo that he could not ſee any Whales where *Scroggs* obſerved them, nor could he deſcry any Land at the Bottom of the ſeveral Bays, when he was ſo far to Eaſtward of the Iſlands and Head-lands; and yet he takes upon him to ſay, he had ſearched all that Coaſt, and found it to be a main Land from Cape *Hope* to Brook *Cobham*, and found the Tide always flowed from the North-eaſt.

In his going out he ſaw much Ice from Lat. 63°. 35′. to Cape *Dobbs*, as well as to *Deer Sound*, in *Wager* River, and in the Streight and Bay near Cape *Hope*, this Year; but none was ſeen in the *Welcome* by *Button*, *Fox* and *Scroggs*, the ſeveral Years they were there at the ſame Seaſon, tho' *Button* and *Scroggs* were as high up as *Whalebone* Point in Lat. 65°. and *Fox* ſaw as far from Lat. 64°. 10′. without ſeeing any Ice in the Sea, or Snow upon the Land, but ſaw great Numbers of ſmall Fiſh leaping, as well as many Whales, near Brook *Cobham*. Captain *Middleton* had, during his whole Voyage out from *Churchill*, and back again to Brook *Cobham*, very fine Weather, without any Storm, or Froſt, or Snow, the Winds for the moſt part blowing from the Eaſtern Quarter; ſo that he had no Pretence upon his Return to avoid ſearching the Weſt Side of the *Welcome*; it was theſe Eaſterly Winds that Year which carried ſo much Ice into the *Welcome* from the South-eaſt,

M as

as well as from the Bay and Streight near Cape *Hope*, all which was forced by the rapid Tide into *Wager* River; and it appears from the Journal, that it was theſe Winds which cauſed ſo great a Quantity of Ice in the River as high as *Deer Sound*, and not from the breaking up of the Ice above, in a freſh Water River, as he gave out, and he would have made the flowing in of the Tide ſo far from the South-eaſtward to have been a Confirmation of it; whereas, by what he has mentioned in his Journal, it is by all Circumſtances a ſalt Water Streight or Paſſage; for the Increaſe of its Wideneſs, from 7 Miles at its Entrance, to 8 Leagues, and of its Depth, from 14 to 80 Fathoms, the Boldneſs, Height, and Craggedneſs of the Coaſt, without Tree or Shrub, and without any Snow or Ice in the Valleys or Hills, are all Symptoms of its being a ſalt Water Paſſage; but the Number of Whales and other Fiſh ſeen above in the Streight, at leaſt 20 Leagues up the River, when none were ſeen below, or in the *Welcome*, or Streight and Bay above Cape *Hope*, is a Demonſtration they did not come under the Ice into *Wager* River from the Eaſtward; and there being none ever ſeen in the Bay or Streights of *Hudſon*, but by the broken Lands on the North-weſt Coaſt, it is next to a Certainty that they came from the Weſtern Ocean to that Place: For it is contrary to Reaſon and Fact to ſuppoſe that Whales and other Sea Fiſh ſhould go up a freſh Water River, and none be below, and that they ſhould be there under the Ice, before it was broken up; which, if the Journal be true, muſt be the Caſe, if it were a freſh Water River, as he affirms it to be; but it was very natural for the Whales to be there, if they came in from the Weſtern Ocean, which was not ſo liable to be frozen as an Inland Bay; for they would puſh their Way through the Streights and broken Lands, until they were prevented by the Ice, which the Eaſterly Winds drove into the Streight from the *Welcome* along with the Flood; and this was jamm'd in among the Iſlands in the Paſſage, and appeared to be firm Ice, as it alſo appeared from the Hills to be ſo below them, to the Mouth of the River.

This alſo eaſily accounts for the Number of Whales ſeen from *Whalebone* Point to Brook *Cobham*, and even to *Whale Cove*, in Lat. 62°. 30′. where many are caught by the *Eſkimaux Indians*, when none are ſeen in the other Parts of the Bay, or in the Streights; for if there be a Communication betwixt the Weſtern Ocean and the

Bay

Bay in this Place, the Preſumption is that it is not by one Paſſage, but that it may be all a broken Land, interſperſed with Iſlands, as the Lands of *Terra del Fuogo* are at the Streights of *Magellan*, which is almoſt a parallel Inſtance, and therefore this Streight of *Wager* may not be the only Inlet into the Bay; but from *Whale Cove* unto that River may be all broken Lands, with ſeveral Sounds among the Iſlands, which is mentioned by *Scroggs* and *Fox*, and can't be controverted from this Journal; ſo that the Whales might get to that Part of the Bay ſooner, as there was no Ice there to obſtruct their Paſſage, when there was much Ice in the *Welome* and Eaſt Entrance of *Wager* Streight, which prevented theſe Whales getting any farther than *Deer* Sound. This, I think, makes it highly probable, that there is a better and eaſier Paſſage Southward of Cape *Dobbs*, betwixt that and *Whale* Cove, in Lat. 62°. 30′. where there is no Ice to obſtruct the Paſſage from the Middle of *June* to *October*; and if the Trade was opened, this might be diſcovered by any Ships who would go there to fiſh for Whales, or would trade with the Natives for Fin and Oil, who might follow them into the Inlets through which they come into the Bay, and this may be done without wintering in the Bay, for they may return any time in *September* or *October* ſafe from any Obſtruction from the Ice.

The only ſeeming Objection to this, and which gave a Handle to Captain *Middleton* to repreſent *Wager* Streight as a freſh Water River, was the Tide flowing into it from the Eaſtward, when, if it had beeen a Streight, he imagined he might have met a Tide of Flood from the Weſtward, and therefore repreſented it as if the Ice was but breaking up in the River after he had enter'd it. But ſince this is a Streight, and not an immediate Communication with the Weſtern Ocean, he could not expect to meet the Weſtern Tide until he had got half way through the Streight; for each Tide flows up its own End of the Streight, and meet in the Middle. This is not only founded upon Reaſon, but upon Fact, in the only parallel Inſtance we know, that is, in the *Magellanick* Streight, tho', by Appearance, this Streight is a greater and bolder Streight than the other.

The Tide at the North-eaſt Entrance of *Magellan* Streight flows from the Eaſtward, and riſes 4 Fathom, before it comes to the firſt Narrow, which is but half a League wide, and from 30 to 35

 Fathom

Fathom deep; after a League or two it increafes to fix or feven Leagues wide to the fecond Narrow, where it is about a League wide, and 30 Fathom deep. Within the fecond Narrow it increafes again to five or fix Leagues wide, and the Tide ftill flows from the Eaftward, and rifes about 10 Feet. In the Mid-channel, about 30 Leagues within the Streight, it is 200 Fathom, and the Channel but 3 Leagues wide, and from thence to the Middle of the Streight it is leffened to 2 Leagues wide, and about 100 Fathom deep, and the Tide ftill flows from the Eaftward for above 50 Leagues. As they come near the Middle of the Streight the Current of the Tide is not above an Hour at each Tide, and the Tide rifes nine Feet. Near Cape *Quad*, beyond the Middle of the Streight, it is but 2 Leagues wide, and for about 13 Leagues farther is rather lefs, fometimes not 4 Miles wide, from whence it gradually widens to the Weft Entrance, where it is 5 Leagues wide; fo that *Wager* Streight is much larger, for fo far as they were in it, which was about 30 Leagues, it being by the Account, as mentioned in the Journal, 6 or 7 Leagues wide, and 80 Fathom deep, which, if there be no other, is a noble Paffage; but there is a great Probability of their being a better and fafer Paffage to the Southward of *Whalebone Point*, by which the Whales get into that Part of the Bay.

Thus from the former Accounts, and what has been divulged by Captain *Middleton* in this Journal, there feems to be ftrong Prefumptions of a Paffage; but after fhewing what he has concealed and falfified in his Journal, and his whole Conduct from his going to *Churchill* until his Return to *England*, and even fince his Return, it will appear plainly that he intended to ferve the Company at the publick Expence, and contrived every thing fo as to ftifle the Difcovery, and to prevent others from undertaking it for the future, fo as to fecure the Favour of the Company, and the Reward he faid they promifed him before he began the Voyage.

As to his Declarations and Conduct during the Voyage, it appears by undeniable Evidence, that he declared, in Prefence of fome of his Officers, to the Company's Governor at *Churchill*, *That he fhould be able to make that Voyage, and none on board him fhould know whether there was a Paffage or not; and he would be a better Friend to the Company than ever.*

The Lieutenant finding one of the Men at the Factory, who very

ry well underſtood the Northern *Indian* Language, and would have been of great Uſe upon the Diſcovery, offered to take him with them at his own Riſk, ſaying he would anſwer it when he came back, it being for the good of the Service they were upon; but the Captain would not allow of it for fear of diſobliging the Company. The Captain, in going Northward from *Churchill*, never once went aſhore, nor ſent his Boat to look out for any Inlet or try the Tide; having only once tried the Current at Sea in 63°. 20′. where he found a very rapid Tide, altho' he found much Ice to Northward, and had Time enough before he entered the Ice to try all the Coaſt, but ſtood off to the Eaſtward, until he paſſed Cape *Dobbs*; and tho' he then found an Opening Northweſtward, he only went in with a View to ſhelter his Ships, but not to look out for a Paſſage; and therefore, when he went in, got to the North-eaſt Side out of the Tide, inſtead of the South-weſt Side, where he ought to have gone, if he had puſhed for a Paſſage; and tho' he lay there three Weeks, he never but once went croſs to the Weſtern Shore, and that only one Day or two before he quit the River, pretending he could not do it for Ice, and even this he does not mention in his Journal, altho' he found there an excellent Cove for ſheltering his Ships. He once pretended to croſs the Streight from *Deer Sound*, where he had no Ice to prevent him, but after going two Leagues he returned, and ſaid it was too far, and he had taſted the Water which was freſh, aſking the Boatmen if it was not ſo, which they contradicted, ſaying only, it was not very ſalt. When the Lieutenant went up to *Deer Sound*, he diſcovered from a Mountain an Opening South-weſtward, upon the other Shore 10 Leagues diſtant, betwixt a high and low Headland, and alſo obſerved the Ice there, when it was a Quarter Flood at *Wager* River, move down the River againſt that Tide; upon his mentioning this to the Captain, he was laugh'd at, who aſk'd him from whence that Tide could come, and no farther Enquiry was made into it.

Afterwards, when from the Numbers of Whales, and Breadth and Depth of the River, it was given out among the Ship's Company, that they believed it was a Streight and no River; he rated ſeveral of them for pretending to ſay ſo againſt his Opinion, ſaying his Clerk was a double-tongued Raſcal, that he would cane the Lieutenant, broomſtick the Maſter, and laſh any others who would

concern

concern themſelves about the Voyage, and threatened that if any kept private Journals, he would break up their Boxes, and take them from them; and tho' he allowed his Clerk to take the Bearings of the Land, and Proſpect in other Parts of the Voyage, yet when in *Wager* River, and at the *Welcome*, he forbid him from taking any. This happened when the Lieutenant and Maſter were down the River, to look out for a Cove for the Ships, when they ſhould ſail out of the River; when they returned, he imagining that Rumour might turn out to his Prejudice, in caſe no farther Enquiry was made about its being a Streight, or River, he ſaid they might go up to try the Tide, and ſee if there was any other Way out into the *Welcome*; which was into the Bay, not into the Weſtern Ocean; but by his Warrant limited them to go to *Deer Sound* or thereabouts; which was only where he had been himſelf before, and ordered them to come back with the utmoſt Diſpatch the Nature of the Service would allow; this was the 28th of *July*. When they were gone, he ſaid, he ſuppoſed the Lieutenant would bring back ſome romantick Account of a Streight or Paſſage; but for his Part he would not take the Ships a Foot farther, and accordingly before their Return unmoored, and was preparing to warp out of the Cove, which he did the Morning after they returned. The Lieutenant upon his Return gave the following Report under his Hand. *viz.*

July 27th, 1742.

I Was ordered, with the Maſter, to take the ſix oar'd Boat, and to go up *Savage Sound*, as high as *Deer Sound*, and try the Tides. I find that the Flood there comes from the River *Wager*; it flow'd there 10 Foot Water.

We then ſail'd from *Deer Sound* for the High Bluff Land on the N. W. Side of the River *Wager*. The Courſe from the Iſlands off the North Side of *Deer Sound* is N. W. and N. W. by N. by Compaſs (Variation allowed W. by N.) We ſounded all the Way over, and had no Ground with a Line of 68 Fathom, to the High Bluff Land. We then ran up a Branch of the main River, and ſounded, and found 50 Fathom one third over that Branch. There were ſeveral Iſlands in it; ſounded about a League off an Iſland on the North Side, and found 30 Fathom Water. In running between the Iſlands and the ſuppoſed Main, which was on the Weſt Side of

of that Branch, the Tide or Freſhes ſuddenly turned againſt us, the Boat altering the Land very much before; ſounded near ſome of the Iſlands, and had no Ground at 68 Fathom; as we run up it, we ſounded near a ſmall Iſland, and had 29 Fathom. We ſteered W. N. W. between the Iſlands, and the Weſt Land by Compaſs (W. by S.) there being ſeveral Iſlands in the fair Way, and no Ground in the Middle of the Channel at 68 Fathom. We went about 15 Leagues above *Deer Sound*, and ſaw a Freſh or Run of Water coming againſt us; and the Wind being fair, I was afraid of ſtaying any longer for fear of hindering the Ships from going to Sea. There is a great Probability of an Opening on the Weſt Side, by the coming in of the Whales; but I could not go higher up to try it for the above mentioned Reaſons.

We went to the Top of a high mountainous Land, from whence we ſaw a great Run or Fall of Water between the Weſt Land and the Iſlands, it was very narrow, ſeemingly not a Mile broad, and at the ſame time ſaw a fair Channel or Streight to the Northwards of the Iſlands, with Lands on both Sides, as high as the Cape of *Good Hope*, running away to the Weſtward, with many Bluff Points and broken Lands. In coming down we ſaw ſeveral very large black Whales playing about the Boat and in Shore.

Aug. 1. 1742. *John Rankin.*

This being a ſtrong Proof of an open fair Channel or Streight going to the Southward of a Weſt, the Captain thought it too flagrant, and therefore, there being ſome little Variation between his Account and the Maſter's, made them cook up the following Report between them, which both were to ſign, which being not ſo particular, did not appear ſo ſtrong for the Paſſage: It run in theſe Words.

Purſuant to an Order from Captain Chriſtopher Middleton, *Commander of his Majeſty's Ship the* Furnace, *bearing Date the 27th of* July, 1742.

WE whoſe Names are hereunto ſubſcribed, took the *Furnace*'s ſix oar'd Boat, and went from *Savage Sound*, where his Majeſty's Ships *Furnace* and *Diſcovery* then lay; and on the 28th at one in the Morning arrived at *Deer Sound*, where we tried the

Tide, and found the Flood came into that Place from the River *Wager*, and rofe at that Time 10 Feet; at fix o' Clock the fame Morning we left *Deer Sound* (where we put the two Northern *Indians* afhore to kill fome Deer) and failed for a high Bluff Land on the North-weft Side of the River *Wager*. Our Courfe from the Iflands on the North Side of *Deer Sound*, to the High Bluff Land, was N. W. by N. by Compafs; we founded frequently, and had no Ground with a Line of 68 Fathom all the Way over. When we were abreaft of the High Bluff Land, we fteered W. N. W. keeping the Mid-Channel, and ftill found no Ground at 68 Fathom, except nigh fome Iflands that lay in the fair Way, about one third over the River, and 30 Fathom within a League of one of them; this Courfe we kept until we got about 15 Leagues from *Deer Sound*; but finding the Tide or Frefh againft us, and the Wind coming fair, we were afraid of ftaying any longer, for fear of hindering the Ships going to Sea. However, we came to a Grapnel with the Boat, and went upon a high mountainous Land, where we had a very fair View of the River; from thence we faw a great Run or Fall of Water between the fuppos'd Main-land and the aforefaid Ifland, very narrow, feemingly not a Mile broad, and about a League from where the Boat lay; but to the Northward we difcovered a large Collection of Water, in which were feveral Iflands and high mountainous Land on both Sides of it, the Weft Side of it having many Bluff Points and broken Lands. In our Return towards the Ships, and not far from *Deer Sound*, we faw feveral large black Whales of the Whalebone Kind, fome of which came very near the Boat; fo that upon the whole, we think there may be fome other Paffage into the Sea from the River *Wager*, befides that which his Majefty's Ships *Furnace* and *Difcovery* came in at; and imagine there is a great Probability of an Opening or Inlet into the Sea fomewhere on the Eaft Side thereof, tho' we cannot fix the Place. Given under our Hands this firft Day of *Auguft*, 1742.

John Rankin.
Robert Wilfon.

It may be eafily feen with what View that Report was altered, the moft material Points being changed: For when they got beyond the N. W. Bluff, inftead of faying that the Current or Frefh

fuddenly

ſuddenly turned againſt them ; it is here ſaid, being againſt them, the firſt being a Tide, the other a Stream. Again, inſtead of mentioning a fair Channel or Streight over the Iſlands, running between high Lands to the Weſtward ; it is here altered, to a large Collection of Water to the Northward, in which were ſeveral Iſlands, with high Land on each Side of it, the Weſt Side having Bluff Points and broken Lands, without determining the Courſe of the Streight to the Weſtward. And inſtead of ſaying there was a great Probability of an Opening on the Weſt Side, by the coming in of the Whales ; it is here altered to, Upon the whole, we think there may be ſome other Paſſage into the Sea from the River *Wager*, beſides that which his Majeſty's Ships came in at, without determining it to the Weſtward, as in the other ; but on the contrary, to make it ſeem otherwiſe, they ſay, *and imagine, there is a great Probability of an Opening or Inlet into the Sea, ſomewhere on the Eaſt Side thereof, tho' we cannot fix the Place.* This Change ſeems wholly calculated with a View to leave it undetermined, that the Captain might have it in his Power to ſay that the Open was from the Northward or Eaſtward from *Baffin*'s Bay, and pretend that the Whales came from thence. But both the Lieutenant and Maſter have ſince confirmed, that the Streight beyond the Iſlands was four or five Leagues wide, free from Ice, and its Courſe ran W. S. W. and the Maſter having ſeen further than the Lieutenant from the Top of the Mountain where he killed two Deer, was for going further ; but the Lieutenant, his Proviſions being ſpent, and he having exceeded his Orders by 15 Leagues at leaſt (for he computed it 20 Leagues, but the Captain would not allow it to be ſo far) and had alſo outſtay'd his Time, he was afraid he ſhould be put in arreſt if he proceeded farther, and durſt not proceed. However, he took a Bottle of Water filled there at the Shore, and two Bottles filled further down the Streight Eaſtward ; and the Captain, when he came on board, own'd that the Bottle of Water taken up at the Weſtern End of the Streight, near the Current or Fall of Water, was the ſalteſt, which the Maſter ſaid was as Salt as any he had taſted in thoſe Seas, which was alſo confirmed by others who taſted it on board ; the Lieutenant is now convinced that it was a Tide or Ripling which came from the W. S. W. which ſtopt the Way of the Boat, and made them come to a Grapnel, and that it was the Tide of

Flood; for it was then flowing Water, and flowed 6 Feet when he was aſhore: But the Captain, under Pretence it was brackiſh, would not purſue the Diſcovery of that South-weſtern Streight or Paſſage, but immediately warped out of the Cove, and on the 4th of *Auguſt*, the beſt Month in the Year to perfect the Diſcovery, he ſailed out of the River to make the Diſcovery North-eaſtward, the quite contrary Courſe he ſhould have taken according to his Inſtructions: Nor did he call a Council to warrant him for quitting the Diſcovery; tho' on all Emergencies, or where it was likely to turn out of Advantage in promoting the Diſcovery, he was directed to call one, and act for the beſt of the Service he went upon, but quit the Paſſage without Advice, by his own Authority and Pleaſure; pretending all the while he was in the Paſſage, to regret that he could not get out of the River, for the Ice in it and the *Welcome*, in order to proſecute the Diſcovery. After this, in order to have an Excuſe, and to pretend that he had followed his Inſtructions, which was to proceed without Loſs of Time to *Whalebone Point*, and there to endeavour to meet the Tide of Flood on either Side of that Point he found the beſt Paſſage, in caſe it were an Iſland, whether the Flood came from the Northweſt or Southweſt; and if he found, after doubling that Cape, either a Streight or open Sea to purſue his Courſe, ſtill meeting the Tide of Flood; tho' this limited him to meet the Tide, if it came from any Part to the Weſtward, yet he finding that the Tide did not meet him, but followed him into *Wager* River, and having taken no Pains to know how the Flood was at the Weſt End of the Streight beyond *Deer Sound*, deſpiſing the Lieutenant's firſt Report, which mentioned a Tide from the W. S. W. meeting them, thought, if he could find a Tide, or have a Probability to account for a Tide's coming from the North-eaſtward into *Wager* River, he might then ſay he followed his Inſtructions in meeting the Tide, altho' it came from the N. E. and accordingly, without allowing any Boat to go aſhore to try the Tide, until he himſelf landed at Cape *Frigid*, at what he calls the frozen Streight: He in his Journal from his own Obſervations of the Current, always affirms the Tide of Flood came from the N. E. by Cape *Hope*, to *Wager* River, and affirms that at Cape *Frigid* a W. by S. Moon made high Water, and that it flowed from the South-eaſtward through a frozen Streight, from four to ſeven Leagues

 wide,

wide, and accordingly he has laid it down ſo in his new Chart ſince his Return, and pointed all the Darts in it, ſhewing the Courſe of the Flood, through that frozen Streight up into *Wager* River, and as far as Brook *Cobham* along the *Welcome*, where he pretends the South-eaſtern Tide meets it.

Now I ſhall plainly make it appear from Reaſon, and from the Obſervations of experienced Men on board him, his own Officers; and from his Caution in preventing any on board him, from knowing the Time, Current, and Height of the Tide, by his making his Obſervations only on board, and regulating and minuting them down in the Logg Book and Journal as he thought proper; that there was no ſuch Tide from the North-eaſt, and that he muſt have known that there was no ſuch Tide, but endeavoured to conceal the true Tide from his People on board; I ſhall alſo ſhew, that the Tide of Flood came the contrary Way from the South-weſtward near Brook *Cobham*, and ſo went up Part of *Wager* River; I ſhall alſo ſhew, there was no ſuch frozen Streight as he has laid down in his Chart, but the whole is falſely laid down, and the only Streight there was round the Iſland he ſtood upon, which was but three Leagues wide, and full of ſmaller Iſlands, which Streight went round the Iſland from the North by the Eaſt, and came out again by the South and Weſt, between the Iſland he was on, and the low Beach oppoſite to Cape *Hope*, ſo that to make out that Point, that he had ſo far followed his Inſtructions in meeting the Tide of Flood, he has manifeſtly and falſely impoſed upon the Publick in his Chart, by making a Streight and Tide where there were none.

To ſhew that he has given a falſe Account of this Tide and frozen Streight, I muſt obſerve, that when he ſent down the Lieutenant and Maſter to look out for a Cove at the Mouth of *Wager* River, they were incloſed in the Ice, and drew up their Boat upon a large Piece of Ice, which was carried by the Tide of Ebb to the South-eaſtward, cloſe by the Shore about Cape *Dobbs*, and when the Tide ſlack'd, they row'd over with the Flood to the North Shore, to get into the Eddy out of the Current, and next Day went up the River. Again, when the Ships ſailed out of the River, they were becalm'd, and were afraid of being forced up again by the Return of the Flood; upon which they towed with their Boats a-head, and plied with the Ships Oars with all their Force to

the North-eaſtward, to get out of the Way of the Tide of Flood; but if the Flood had come from the N. E. they would have been juſt in the Way of the Tide of Flood, and to have avoided it, they ought to have ſteer'd their Courſe S. E. to Cape *Dobbs*; ſo that both theſe Accounts tally, that the Flood came from the S. W. round Cape *Dobbs*. At half an Hour after two, on the 6th of *Auguſt*, he ordered the Lieutenant on Shore at the low Beach, to try the Tide, being then four Miles from the Shore; at three he made the Signal for him to come on board before he got to the Shore, but he was ſo near as to report that the Tide had fallen two Feet; ſo that he ſeemed to repent his having ſent him to try the Tide, leſt he ſhould find a contrary Tide to what he gave out. And tho' the Lieutenant, when he got aboard, told him it was ebbing Water, and that the Ebb went to the South-weſtward, yet he minuted it down in his Logg-Book, and printed it ſo in his Defence, that it was flowing Water, and the Flood came from the Eaſtward; but in his Journal, he ſays it had ebbed two Feet, and the Flood came from the Eaſtward.

The Captain, Clerk, Gunner and Carpenter went aſhore at Cape *Frigid* the 8th of *Auguſt*, about ten in the Morning, and after going fifteen Miles into the Country, returned to the Boat about ſeven at Night, when he found it was low Water, and roſe 15 Feet, which being three Days and a half after the full Moon, a W. S. W. Moon made low Water, and conſequently a N. N. W. Moon made high Water; and having aſcertained that a W. by N. Moon made high Water in *Wager* River, the Tide at Cape *Frigid* being five Points later, could not raiſe that Tide; for the Tide the farther it flows, is always the later in flowing; and therefore the Tide in *Wager* River being at leaſt three Hours ſooner than at Cape *Frigid*, it could not poſſibly be cauſed by any Tide from thence; nor could the Tide near Brook *Cobham*, where a Weſt Moon made high Water be cauſed by that Tide for the ſame Reaſon, it being above four Hours ſooner than the Tide at Cape *Frigid*.

It appears alſo that there was no Tide nor Current in the Bay above Cape *Hope*, and the Gunner, who was aſhore with the Captain, went with the Carpenter 2 or 3 Miles farther than the Captain and Clerk, even to the very Shore of what he called the *Frozen Streight*, and conſequently knew it better than the Captain; he ſays it was an Iſland they were upon, and the Streight was only

an Arm of the Sea that ſurrounded the Iſland, and detached it from the *Low Beach*; that it was not above 3 Leagues wide on the Eaſt Side, and full of Iſlands, and the Ice was frozen faſt from Side to Side; ſo that it is impoſſible ſo great a Quantity of Water could flow through that Paſſage, if it had a Communication with *Hudſon*'s Streight by Cape *Comfort*, as would fill ſo large a Bay as that above Cape *Hope*, (the Streight from Cape *Hope* to *Wager* River) all that River, for thirty or forty Leagues, which was from 4 to 12 Leagues wide, and the whole Coaſt of the *Welcome* to Brook *Cobham*, for above 60 Leagues, and that from a Streight which was but 3 Leagues wide, and had many Iſlands in it; ſo that the Streight, excluſive of the Iſlands, was not probably four Miles wide: Beſides, had ſo much Water flowed through that Streight, as he has laid it down in his Chart, it muſt have cauſed a very rapid Current in the Bay above Cape *Hope*, it being in the direct Courſe of the Tide. The Captain of the *Diſcovery* alſo in his Anſwer allows, that the Opening of the Streight he ſaw, which was betwixt Cape *Frigid* and the *Low Beach*, was not above three Miles wide, and no ſuch Tide flowed there as in *Wager* River, altho' it was ſo narrow in that Place.

This alſo accounts for that Arm of the Sea's being frozen which ſurrounded the Iſland, becauſe there was no Tide or Current there to break it up. It alſo appears from the Lieutenant, who was left on board to command when the Captain went aſhore, that at eleven of the Clock, after the Captain left the Ship, a ſtrong Current forced him to Northward, which muſt have been the Flood, as it was not high Water until near one of the Clock. And it appears alſo the ſame from the Men who were left with the Boat; for upon the Captain's Return to the Boat, he aſk'd them which way the Flood ſet, and they ſaid to the Northward, which he contradicted, and ſaid they were miſtaken, for it could not be ſo. So that from all theſe Facts, as well as from Reaſon, it appears that the Tide of Flood came from the South-weſtward to that Place and the River *Wager*, and that the Tide and Streight which he has laid down in his Chart, and publiſhed in his Journal, is falſe, and an Impoſition upon the Publick, and only calculated to ſerve his Purpoſe of concealing the Paſſage, by endeavouring to make out that no Tide came from the Weſtward, but all through *Hudſon*'s Streight, or *Baffin*'s Bay, and that *Wager* was a freſh Water River, and that the

the Whales ſeen there came all in through that frozen Streight from *Baffin*'s Bay or *Cumberland*'s Inlet, he having allowed that none came in through *Hudſon*'s Streight, or round *Cary*'s *Swan's Neſt*.

But as a further Confirmation of this South-weſtern Tide, and that it came from the Weſtern Ocean, it appears, that after the Captain had neglected looking into the Bays and Inlets in the Weſt Side of the *Welcome*, from Cape *Dobbs* to *Marble Iſland*, (altho' it had been ordered in Council) in theſe Words: " It was agreed " upon to make the beſt of our Way out of this cold, dangerous, " and narrow Streight, and to make further Obſervations between " the Latitudes of 64°. and 62°. on the North Side of the *Wel-* " *come*, having ſeen large Openings, broken Land and Iſlands, " with ſtrong Tides, but had not an Opportunity of trying from " whence the Flood came in our Paſſage hither." Given under our Hands this 7th of *Auguſt* 1742.

C. Middleton.
J. Rankin.
W. Moor, Maſter of the *Diſcovery*. *Rob. Wilſon.*
Geo. Axx.
J. Hodgton.

When he came to *Marble Iſland*, which he then called *Brook Cobham*, having called another Iſland ſo upon his going Northward, the ſame *Fox* had called ſo before, on the 12th, at 3 in the Morning, he ſent the Lieutenant aſhore to try the Tide, and to look out for a Place of Safety to water the Ships before they returned to *England*. The Iſland was 7 Leagues long, and 3 over, in the broadeſt Place. It lay E. by S. and W. by N. the true bearing Variation allowed, and about 3 Leagues from what they called the Weſtern Main. The Lieutenant on the South Side found an excellent Cove, ſafe from all Winds, with a ſmall Iſland lying croſs the Entrance. He ſounded without and within the Cove, and found two and a Half Fathom in the Entrance at low Water, and deep and ſafe lying within it. Whilſt he was ſounding, taking a Draught of the Cove, and upon the Iſland taking a View of an Opening, he obſerv'd on the Weſt Main; the *Indians* killed a Deer and white Bear, and about eight at Night, as they were taking off the Bear's Skin, a ſtrong Tide of Flood came from the Northweſt

weſt by the Compaſs, and had almoſt carried the Bear away, which proves that the Tide of Flood came from the Weſtward. This I ſhall give in his own Words, as he minuted it down at *Marble Iſland* at the time it happened, annexed to the rough Draught he had made of the Cove, *viz.*

This is the Cove upon Brook *Cobham* or *Marble Iſland*, it was almoſt dark, my Men were taking the Skin off the Bear they had killed in the Water.

The Tide came ſuddenly from W. N. W. round the North-weſt End of the Iſland upon us, and flowed ſo faſt, that we had almoſt loſt the Bear; we were forced to throw it into the Boat, my Men up to the Middle in Water by the ſudden Flowing of the Tide, as all the Men can prove.

I am very certain that there is a great Probability of a Paſſage or Streight leading to ſome Weſtern Ocean from the above Reaſon; for I did obſerve an Opening to the Weſtward of *Marble Iſland*, and deſired I might go there, but he told me it did not ſignify much to go thither; but if I had a mind to go to *Marble Iſland* for Water I might, ſo I did not come nigh the Opening I perceived to the Weſtward. It was almoſt calm all the Day we lay there.

Auguſt 12th, 1742. *John Rankin.*

After the Lieutenant returned on board, the Maſter was ſent aſhore; upon his Return he told him the Tides roſe there ſometimes very high, and wanted to go aſhore again to obſerve them; which he refuſed, under Pretence he had ſtaid too long aſhore before. It appears from the Journal, that by Marks on the Shore it ſometimes roſe there 22 Feet.

It is allowed alſo that a North-weſterly Wind at *Churchill* always raiſed the Tide higher at Neap Tides than an South-eaſterly Wind did at Spring Tides.

The two Northern *Indians* who were on board Captain *Middleton* were very intelligent Men, and the other *Indian* being a very bad Interpreter for them, Mr. *Thompſon*, the Surgeon, who could ſpeak ſome of the Southern *Indian* Tongue, was endeavouring to learn their Language, and to teach them *Engliſh*, and was making out a Vocabulary of their Language, which the Captain obſerving, threatened

threatened to ufe him ill, or crop him, in cafe he had any Correfpondence with them; fo that he was obliged to meet them in private, and for that Reafon could not know fo much from them as he otherwife would; but by the beft Account he could get from them, they told him, that the Copper Mine which they generally went to once in two Years, was not far from that Coaft where they were, between Lat. 62°. and 64°. that it was upon an Arm of the Sea, the Water being falt; that they were five Days in paffing it in their Canoes; that it was fo deep, that if they cut a Deer's Skin into Thongs, it would not reach the Bottom; that the Streight went towards the Sun almoft at Noon, and that there were many large black Fifh in it fpouting up Water. *Lovegrove*, one of the Factory Men at *Churchill*, who had been often at *Whale Cove*, in Lat. 62°. 30′. in the Company's Sloop, trading for Whale-fin with the Natives, alfo told them, that the Coaft there was all a broken Land and Iflands, and that upon his going upon one of thefe Iflands, he faw an open Sea Weftward of it. *Wilfon* alfo, who has been Mafter of the Sloop, which goes to *Whale Cove*, for feveral Years, told at *Churchill*, that he had the Curiofity to pafs in through thofe Iflands near the *Whale Cove*, and found the Opening enlarge itfelf South-weft, and became fo wide, that he could fee no Land on either Side. Yet, tho' the Captain might have known this, and much more, which he had from *Norton* and *Scrogg*'s Crew, as well as Accounts from the *Indians* before this Voyage to the fame Purpofe, he never once made any Effay to land upon that Weftern Coaft, or to look out for a Weftern Tide or Inlet.

What was ftill as unpardonable as neglecting the Difcovery, was his putting the two Northern *Indians* afhore on *Marble Ifland* againft their Inclinations, when they were defirous to come to *England*, in a very bad Boat he got at *Churchill*, which they did not know how to manage, in an Ifland 3 Leagues from the fuppofed Main, the *Efkimaux Indians*, their Enemies, living upon that Coaft, and fome hundred Miles diftant from their own Country, infomuch that one of them, who was about 40 Years old, when he parted with Mr. *Thompfon* the Surgeon, with Tears told him, he did not know what would become of them; he told them he was very much concerned at it, but fince it was the Captain's Pleafure, it muft be complied with.

The

The Captain gave them ſome Proviſions, Ammunition, Hatchets and Toys; but leaving them in a deſolate Iſland, with a bad Boat, among their Enemies, at ſo great a Diſtance from their own Country, was unpardonable, when by a Day or two's Sailing to the Southward, he could have landed them in a Country they knew, where they had no Enemies to be afraid of. The Excuſe he made for not bringing them to *England* was, that upon his Return his Friends might be out of the Admiralty, and as he had no Orders to take them home, they would be left a Charge upon him; and when they learned to ſpeak *Engliſh*, they would be talking of the Copper Mine and Paſſage, and would put the Publick to the Expence of ſending out more Ships in queſt of it. And this, no doubt, was the true Reaſon for that Piece of Cruelty; for he thought if they came to *England*, he ſhould not be able to conceal the Paſſage.

Whilſt he was returning home he has ſometimes ſaid, his Character was ſo well eſtabliſhed, that no Man after him would ever attempt to diſcover the Paſſage; ſo that I think it is plain, from every Circumſtance of his Conduct during the Voyage, that he wanted to make his Peace, and get ſuch a Reward from the Company, tho' at the Expence and Loſs of the Publick, as ſhould make him eaſy afterwards, without his making any more uncertain Voyages, by his ſtifling the Diſcovery, and his making it appear impracticable for any other to undertake it with any Proſpect of Succeſs for the future; and ſince his Return he has acted accordingly, as was plain from his correſponding with the Company even before he got to *London*, letting them know he had conveyed home one of their Ships from the *Orkneys*, and directing all his Crew not to mention any thing of the Voyage or Diſcovery for ſome time, which was done with a View of cloſing upon better Terms with the Company, by letting them know that he had conducted Matters ſo, that he had it in his Power either to make out the Paſſage, or ſtifle it, according to the Manner he could make out his Journal and Charts; and it is plain, from the Time he took to give Copies of his Journal, and to make out his Chart, that it was delayed until they had ſettled every thing to his Liking, and then he publiſhed, or gave out, his Chart and Journal, with the Concealment and Diſguiſes I have already taken notice of, making all the Coaſt, from *Whale Cove* to Cape *Dobbs*, to be a continued main

Land, and *Wager* Streight to be a freſh Water River, making out his frozen Streight, and Flood coming from thence, in order to make all Things tally, and ſhew there was no Tide in the Bay from the Weſtern Ocean of *America*, but that all theſe high and rapid Tides, and Whales in the Bays and River of *Wager*, come from *Hudſon*'s Streights or *Baffin*'s Bay, through his finely projected frozen Streight, which was to anſwer all Difficulties. Upon this the *Hudſon*'s *Bay* Company exulted, and ſaid, Captain *Middleton* had not only not found a Paſſage, but that he had ſhewn it to be impracticable for any other to make any future Attempt with any Proſpect of Succeſs.

Whilſt this Scheme was going on, he was preparing his Journal, making, and altering his Charts, to anſwer his Purpoſe, and ſecuring his People from divulging what they knew. The Maſter of the *Diſcovery* was his Couſin, and ſome ſaid was to marry his Daughter. He himſelf had got great Reputation from the Royal Society by his Obſervations upon Cold, and for what he had diſcovered had got a Medal from them. He was upon good Terms with the Lords of the Admiralty, and was to dedicate his Charts and Diſcoveries to the King, and Noblemen of the firſt Rank, as well as to the Lords of the Admiralty; ſo this put him in a Condition of ſerving his Maſter, Gunner, &c. in ſome Time. He had alſo recommended his Lieutenant, and thought no other on board had Weight enough to impeach his Proceedings, which, if they failed in, would ruin their Characters; ſo that ſecuring his Officers, he thought he had all Things ſafe among the reſt of his Crew; for thoſe on board him, who were but young Seamen, could have no Weight againſt him; ſo all he had to do was to lull me aſleep, and convince me that there was no Paſſage: For as he knew I had the Diſcovery much at Heart, and had ſtrong Reaſons to believe there was a Paſſage, which he had always before confirmed me in, it might be difficult for him all at once to convince me that there was none, and that all former Journals and Accounts were falſe; however, as he knew I had a good Opinion of his Capacity, and did not doubt his Integrity, ſeeming always zealous before to promote the Attempt, which had occaſioned my recommending him as a proper and experienced Commander to undertake the Diſcovery; and he having owned to me the Company's endeavouring to bribe him with an Offer of 5000 *l.* to return to their Service, and not

go the Voyage, or to go in purſuit of it to *Davis*'s Streight, or any other Way but that he was ordered upon, he thought himſelf ſure of my not doubting his Integrity, and therefore ſhould be ready to believe whatever Accounts he ſhould ſend me. Accordingly, before he came to *England*, he ſent me a Letter from the *Orkneys*, dated *September* 17, 1742, a Duplicate of which he ſent me upon his Arrival in the River, wherein he gave me a ſhort Abſtract of his Voyage from *Churchill* until his Return to Brook *Cobham* and the *Orkneys*, concealing every Article that made for the Paſſage, only mentioning the Difficulties he was in by the Ice in the *Welcome*, and in *Wager* River, affirming it to be a freſh Water River, fill'd with Ice, and that he ſtaid ſo long in it as to take a Draught of it, regretting his being ſo long confined in it, that he could not get out of it to proſecute the Diſcovery; and ſaid, (upon ſailing out North-eaſtward, getting into another perilous Streight, full of Ice, and afterwards being embayed in Lat. 66. 40′. and finding a frozen Streight, from whence the Tide came, from the South-eaſtward, through *Hudſon*'s Streight, which flowed 15 Feet, and a W. by S. Moon made high Water, and it not being likely to break up) they returned, and ſearched all the Weſt Side of the *Welcome*, cloſe in to the Shore, which he found was a continuous Main-land, tho' there were ſeveral deep Bays and ſmall Iſlands; and after trying the Tides, and finding them ſtill come from the Eaſtward, and having no Encouragement, he ſailed from Brook *Cobham* for *England*; but careleſly ſaid, in coaſting along the Shore, he ſaw ſeveral black Whales near Brook *Cobham* of the Whalebone Kind: To which Letter at large I refer in the Appendix. His being ſo certain that *Wager* was a freſh Water River, full of Ice, into which the Tide flowed from the Eaſtward, and that the whole Coaſt was a Main-land from thence to Brook *Cobham*, and that he was abſolutely embayed above Cape *Hope*, and his affirming that the Tide came by Cape *Comfort*, through *Hudſon*'s Streights, and his new frozen Streight to *Wager* River, all which I believed, as I did not doubt his Veracity, made me deſpair of the Paſſage, and give it up, thinking it would be impracticable, or at leaſt very difficult, in caſe there was one farther North than 67 Degrees: However, as I found a Difficulty in accounting for a Tide at the frozen Streight from a W. by S. Moon, ſo near Cape *Comfort*, where a S. by E. Moon made high Water, and could not account how ſuch rapid

Tides as he mentioned were in *Wager* River, could come through a frozen Streight, and could not know how the Whales came to be near Brook *Cobham*, ſince none were ever ſeen in any other Part of the Bay, or were ever ſeen in *Hudſon*'s Streights, I wrote him a Letter the 20th of *October*, telling him, that ſince he was ſure it was a Main-land from Brook *Cobham* to *Wager* River, and that it was a freſh Water River, and that there was no Paſſage above Cape *Hope* to near Lat. 67°. I deſpaired of there being any ſafe Paſſage farther North; but as I could not account how a W. by S. Moon could make high Water at the frozen Streight, when a S. by E. Moon made high Water at Cape *Comfort* ſo near it, and could not account how the Whales came to Brook *Cobham*, ſince they were no where elſe in the Bay, and never were ſeen in *Hudſon's Streights*; I deſired him to anſwer thoſe two Objections, and let me know his Opinion upon thoſe two Points, and to ſend me a Copy of his Journal, and the Chart of the Coaſts he had diſcovered, and deſired to know if it was a continuous Coaſt on the Eaſt Side of the *Welcome* from *Cary's Swan's Neſt* to the frozen Streight, or Iſlands; and how ſo great and rapid Tides could be in *Wager* River, as to run at the Rate of five or ſix Miles in an Hour, if the Streight was frozen through which it came; and how there came to be ſo much Ice in the *Welcome* this Year, ſince when *Button*, *Fox*, and *Scroggs* were there, in the ſame Month of *July*, none of them had ſeen any Ice there.

Before I got an Anſwer to this Letter, I had a Letter dated the 1ſt of *November*, from Mr. *Lanrick*, a Gentleman who had been bred a Scholar, and I had recommended him to Captain *Middleton* to go the Voyage: He had uſed him well, as he ſaid, upon my Recommendation, but more probably to gain his good Opinion, thinking him capable of making Obſervations upon the Voyage; and that I might depend upon what he might relate.

In his Letter to me, he, in a manner, recited the ſame Particulars I had before from the Captain, as if it had been penned by the ſame Hand, only with this particular Addition, that they entered the Mouth of a great River, which was quite full of Ice, juſt breaking up as they entered it; that it was in ſome Places four Leagues wide, and in others leſs, having high Lands on both Sides, with deep Water cloſe by the Rocks; that at firſt they thought there might be a Paſſage through that Way; but finding the Flood

came

came from the *Welcome*, they knew there was no ſuch Thing; beſides, they ſent up the Boat ſo far, that they could ſee the Stream or freſh Water River; this alſo ſeemed to confirm me that it was a River, tho' this Letter was probably penned by the Captain's Order or Knowledge; for after he had cloſed his Relation, he began this remarkable Paragraph.

Sir, This Account I ſhould have ſent you before now, but that the Captain, for Reaſons to himſelf beſt known, deſired that none of us ſhould ſay any Thing relating to the Diſcovery for a little.

This Paragraph, however, raiſed no Doubts in me, as I did not doubt the Captain's Veracity.

About the Beginning of *December* I received the following Anſwer to my Letter from the Captain, which I ſhall deliver in his own Words.

S I R, *London, Nov. 27th*, 1742.

I Had the Favour of yours of the 20th *ult.* which happened to lie ſome Days at my former Habitation, before it was forwarded to me, and I ſhall tranſmit you the Chart, together with the Journal and other Obſervations, by the firſt convenient Opportunity; in the mean time, I ſhall give you the beſt Satisfaction I am able, with relation to the Difficulties which have occurr'd to you; and firſt, 'tis to be noted, that all the Land along the Eaſt Side of the *Welcome*, from the 64th Degree of Latitude to the frozen Streight, is one continued level Land, ſomewhat like to *Dungenneſs*, low and ſhingly. The great Tides you mention, which flows up the River *Wager*, and off Cape *Dobbs*, comes all from the frozen Streight E. by N. by Compaſs, according to the Courſe of the new Streight, that we paſſed between Cape *Dobbs* and Cape *Hope*; the mean Variation between the ſaid Capes is 40°. Weſterly, and makes the true Courſe of this Streight N. 40°. Eaſterly; the ſaid Streight ends to the Weſtward of Cape *Hope*, in a Bay 20 Leagues deep, and 15 Leagues broad, which lies W. N. W. by the true Bearings; and we very carefully ſurrounded it, ſailing up to the very Bottom, within two or three Leagues, and found no Appearance of a Paſſage for either Tides or Veſſels; and all the Way I ſailed from Cape *Hope*, quite down to the Bottom of this Bay, I tried the Tides, and all round, found neither Ebb nor Flood, which muſt have appeared, had there been any. The

Land

Land was all very high and bold, aſcending into the Country to a vaſt Heighth, without any Breaks, ſo that had there been a Paſſage here, we could not have miſſed of it.

With regard to the Tide, which you think would have been obſtructed from flowing ſo rapidly to *Wager* River, if the Streight was froze faſt from Side to Side; I need only obſerve to you, that at *Churchill*, all the Winter, the Tide ebbs and flows up the River in the ſame Manner as if there was no Ice, being lifted every Tide from 12 to 18 Feet, all, except what is faſt to the Ground, and falls again upon the Ebb, tho' eight or nine Foot thick; now cloſe to the frozen Streight is 100 Fathoms of Water or more, and probably that Depth may continue the whole Length; and then there is a Paſſage free for the Flood and Ebb to paſs without lifting; but I obſerved this Ice was all crack'd round the Shores, and on the Iſlands as at *Churchill.*

You ſeem to be at a Loſs how to account for the black Whales getting to Brook *Cobham*, if they do not paſs and repaſs by *Hudſon's Streights*; now, 'tis true I never ſaw any above 20 Leagues up *Hudſon's Streights*, but I have traded with *Indians* off *Nottingham* and *Diggs*, for Whale-bone freſh taken; for my own Part, I can't think theſe Whales came round *Cary's Swan's Neſt*, but through the frozen Streights under the Ice, for we ſaw many of them in *Wager* River, and in the 66th Degree of Latitude; and theſe may not come through *Hudſon's Streights*, but to the Northward, as all the North Side of *Hudſon's Streight*, appears to be broken Land and Iſlands; and *Cumberland's Bay*, *Baffin's Bay*, and *Streight Davis*, may have a Communication with this new frozen Streight, and Whales, *&c.* may come from thence.

It is hardly poſſible to account for all the Difficulties about the Tides; for tho' it flows E. S. E. at *Reſolution*, and S. by E. at Cape *Diggs*, which makes five Points in running 130 Leagues; yet it is but one Point in going down to *Albany* and *Mooſe* River; for there it flows South, and the Diſtance is 250 Leagues. So from *Humber* to *Cromer* in the *Lincolnſhire* Coaſt, (as I mentioned formerly) is but 14 Leagues, and at one Place it flows W. by S. at the other N. W. likewiſe from the frozen Streight to *Churchill*, is but two Points Difference, or an Hour and half of Time, in the Diſtance of 200 Leagues. So that I think no Rule can be fixed

where

where Tides flow into deep Bays, obſtructed by Iſlands or Counter Tides.

The Ice I met with in the *Welcome*, was moſt of it to the Northward of all the Parts before diſcovered; ſo that none who went before me could have ſeen it, for moſt of it lay to the Northward of *Whalebone Point*, and every Year is not alike, with reſpect to the Wind bringing it to the Southward; and it is entirely directed by the Winds here, as well as in all other Parts of the Bay; in our Way to *Churchill* there was leſs Ice than uſually happens, and it was alſo ſooner clear in the Spring by 15 Days than common.

Undoubtedly there is no Hope of a Paſſage to encourage any further Trial between *Churchill* and ſo far as we have gone; and if there be any further to the Northward, it muſt be impaſſable for the Ice, and the Narrowneſs of any ſuch Outlet in 67°. or 68°. of Latitude, it cannot be clear of Ice one Week in a Year, and many Years, as I apprehend, not clear at all.

In any other Attempts, I ſhall be glad to give you all the Aſſiſtance I can, and furniſh you with any other Informations, that you may think needful to promote your Deſign; but I hope never to venture myſelf that Way again.

My Friends being out of the Admiralty, I find there will be a great deal of Difficulty to get any Thing done for me in the Navy at preſent, or to procure any other Recompenſe for my Loſs theſe two Summers, in leaving the *Hudſon's Bay* Service, where I ſhould have received 1400 *l.* in the Time that I have acquired 160 *l.* in the Government's.

I remain with great Sincerity and Reſpect,

Sir, Your moſt obliged humble Servant,

Chriſtopher Middleton.

P. S. The *Eſkimaux* and the Northern *Indians* I had with me, are utter Strangers to each other, in Manners and Language, neither could I make the *Eſkimaux* underſtand me by the Vocabulary I had of thoſe in *Hudſon's Streight.*

It appears from this Letter, how uſeful it was for him to have this new frozen Streight; for without it he could not account for the great and rapid Tides at Cape *Dobbs* and *Wager* River,

and at Brook *Cobham*, the Tide from *Hudson's Streight* being all loſt in the Bay, and could not poſſibly afterwards raiſe ſuch high Tides in the *Welcome* and *Wager* River; nor could he give any Reaſon why Whales ſhould be at Brook *Cobham*, or how they could get there, without coming from the Weſtern Ocean, but for his frozen Streight; ſince he gives up their coming in through *Hudſon's Streight*, and alſo is convinced they did not come round *Cary's Swan's Neſt*; and as a further Proof that they came through his new frozen Streight, he diſcovers, what he had concealed before, that there were ſeveral alſo in *Wager* River, and ſays farther, that they were alſo ſeen in Lat. 66°. which was to make me believe they were ſeen near Cape *Hope* by the frozen Streight; tho' it is evident from his Journal, and all his People on board, that none were ever ſeen there; and to make this appear more probable, he ſays, the Sea at the North Entrance of the frozen Streight was above 100 Fathoms deep, tho' it appears both from Logg-Book and Journal, that theſe Soundings were taken in the Bay North of Cape *Hope*, and when they came near Cape *Frigid* by his frozen Streight, in the Mid-Channel between that and Cape *Hope*, they had but 55 Fathoms; and as they went nearer it, had 48, and ſtanding in ſtill nearer to it, had Soundings from 40 to 27 Fathoms; ſo that what he mentions of the Depth of the Streight, was not only at random, but ſeems to be contrary to Fact, but were neceſſary to be believed to ſerve his Purpoſe of Hoodwinking me; and tho' he owns the Difficulty of accounting for the Time of the Tide at Cape *Frigid*, yet he endeavours to evade it, by ſhewing in other Inſtances where different Tides met, and in Eddy Tides, Difficulties not eaſily accounted for; tho' in theſe the Inſtances were not parallel. For the Inſtance he gives of its flowing from *Reſolution* to *Diggs*'s Iſle, 140 Leagues, the Length of *Hudſon's Streight* in five Points, or 3°. 48'. and being but one Point or 48'. in flowing to *Mooſe* River 250 Leagues, is a groſs Impoſition; for a North and South Moon making high Water at the ſame Place, a North Moon makes it there, which is 17 Points Difference, or 12 Hours 48 Minutes, which he muſt know is the Caſe; and yet in his Letter he would impoſe this for Fact, that I might believe there was nothing to be known from the Tide. Yet as he dogmatically aſſerted, that there was no Hopes of a Paſſage from *Churchill* to the frozen Streight, but all was a Mainland;

land; ſince I did not doubt his Veracity, I was obliged to take his Solution to my Objections as the beſt could be given to account for it. And accordingly on the 14th of *December* I anſwered his Letter, that ſince no other Way could be found for the Whales to come into that Part of the Bay but through his frozen Streight, nor for the Tide, I took it as the only Solution could be given, and therefore did believe he had done as much as could be done, in his Attempt to find out the Paſſage; and that it would be to no Purpoſe to look for it farther North, as the Navigation would be too difficult and dangerous; but as he promiſed to aſſiſt me in any other Attempt, I deſired his Aſſiſtance, by informing me of what he knew in relation to the Climate, Coaſts, River, and Trade in the Bay, that I might prepare Matters to attack the Company's Charter, and open the Trade, which I thought would be of great Advantage to *Britain*, by making Settlements higher up upon the Rivers in better Climates, and by that Means ſecuring that Country and Trade from the *French*.

This I had Reaſon to hope for from him, becauſe before he went upon the Voyage, the Company had done all they poſſibly could to have diſtreſſed him in the Attempt of the Diſcovery of a Paſſage, even ſo far as to forbid their Governors to give him the Uſe of their Ports, and when applied to by the Lords of the Admiralty, to give him Aſſiſtance, they only allowed their Governors to give him Aſſiſtance if he were in the utmoſt Danger, but not otherwiſe; but to my great Surprize, inſtead of his aſſiſting me as he promiſed in his former Letters in any other Attempt, I found his Anſwer calculated to ſerve the Company, and ſhew it to be impracticable to ſettle the Lands, or lay open the Trade; unleſs we could diſpoſſeſs the *French* of *Canada*, which was the only Method to ſecure the Company in their Monopoly; and this he ſaid was the principal Thing he could think of at preſent, for his Indiſpoſition prevented him from drawing up a further Account of his Voyage; and he had nothing material farther worth imparting to me, except a Chart of the whole Bay and Streight, which would be ſoon engraved, having already ſent his Journal and Obſervations. His Letter I ſhall give in his own Words, *viz.*

 SIR,

S I R,

I Was duly favoured with yours of the 14th *December*, and am ſorry I could not return my Anſwer ſooner, but the ill State of Health that I labour under prevented me in this, as well as in many other of my Affairs.

It gives me much Satisfaction to find, that you approve of the Solutions I ſent in regard to the Difficulties you propoſed; and that you are convinced I have done all that was neceſſary to put the Impaſſability through thoſe Seas to the Weſtward out of Queſtion, in ſuch Manner as to render any Attempt needleſs for the future; but on the contrary, I ſhould have been infinitely pleaſed had our Expedition ſucceeded according to the Reaſonableneſs of your Expectations.

I have ſeriouſly conſidered your Propoſition of laying open the *Hudſon's Bay* Trade, and ſettling the Country higher up, upon thoſe great Rivers which run into the Bay; and tho' I may agree with you in the great Advantage the Publick would reap from ſuch a Settlement, (could it be made) in the Obſtruction it would give to the *French*, both as to their Trade, and their cutting off their Communication with the *Miſſiſſippi*; yet I muſt declare my Opinion, that it is altogether impracticable upon many Accounts; for I cannot ſee where we could find People enough that would be willing or able to undergo the Fatigue of travelling thoſe frozen Climates, or what Encouragement would be ſufficient to make them attempt it, with ſuch dangerous Enemies on every Side; no *Europeans* could undergo ſuch Hardſhips as thoſe *French* that intercept the *Engliſh* Trade, who are inur'd to it, and are called by us Wood-runners, or *Coureurs de Bois*; for they endure Fatigues juſt the ſame as the native *Indians*, with whom they have been mixed and intermarried, for two, three, or more Generations. As to the Rivers you mention, none of them are navigable with any Thing but Canoes, ſo ſmall that they carry but two Men, and are forced to make Uſe of Land Carriages near one fourth Part of the Way, by Reaſon of Water-falls, during that little Summer they enjoy.

Out of 120 Men and Officers the Company have in the Bay, not five are capable of venturing in one of theſe Canoes, they are ſo apt to overturn and drown them; many of our People have been

twenty Years and upwards there, and yet are not dextrous enough to manage a Canoe; ſo there would be no tranſporting People that Way.

Should there happen a *French* War, the beſt Step we could take towards rooting them out of *America*, would be, in the firſt Place to take *Canada*, which I make no queſtion might be done, if attempted in a proper Manner, and at a right Seaſon of the Year. Had Sir *Hovenden Walker* ſucceeded when he was ſent upon that Expedition, it would undoubtedly have been of great Advantage to us; for at that Time the *French* were not one tenth Part ſo numerous as now, that they have intermarried with the Natives, and over-run the whole Country: So that it is become a Matter of infinite Difficulty to root them quite out of their Poſſeſſions and Trade in *America*.

I look upon Sir *Hovenden*'s Miſcarriage in his Expedition, to be owing to this, that he did not arrive there till the latter End of *Auguſt*, at which Time he ought to have been returning; and whenever a War happens again with *France*, ſhould it be thought proper to attempt the taking of *Canada*, we ought to be in the River *St. Laurence* by the firſt of *June* at fartheſt; and as to the Difficulties Sir *Hovenden* complained of, from the Uncertainties of the Currents, Fogs, *&c.* they are ſuch as we make no Account of conquering in *Hudſon's Bay*, and the Streights, where they are certainly greater.

I can ſet the Currents and Tides in any Weather, even under a Main-ſail, in a Storm of Wind, ſo as to diſcover both how faſt and upon what Point of the Compaſs it ſets: And then as to obſerving the Latitude in foggy Seaſons, I have ſeldom miſſed two Days together, if it be tolerable ſmooth Water, as you will find in our Journals. Now I apprehend that the Navigation in the River *St. Laurence* muſt be attended with much fewer Inconveniencies than in *Hudſon's Streight*; and thoſe Coaſts where we have no Soundings, much Ice, great Fogs, with ſtrong Tides and various Currents.

This is the principal Matter that I can think of at preſent. Had not my Indiſpoſition prevented me, I ſhould before this Time have drawn up ſome further Account of our late Voyage; but I have nothing material worth imparting to you farther, except a Chart of the whole Bay and Streight, which will be engraved in a

little Time ; for you already have my Journals and Obſervations, as well as the Accounts of thoſe that attempted the Diſcovery before me.

I am very much obliged to you for your kind Wiſhes, and all the Favours you have conferred on me, and am as yet quite uncertain as to what their Lordſhips intend to do for me ; they treat me with great Reſpect, and ſuch as I have the Honour to viſit, as Lord *Winchelſea*, Lord *Baltimore*, and Admiral *Cavendiſh* have all promiſed me their Favours.

London, Jan. 18. 1742-3.

I am, Sir,
Your moſt obedient humble Servant.
Chriſtopher Middleton.

Before I got this Anſwer, his long expected Journal and Chart of ſo much of the Bay as took in all his new Diſcovery came to hand, about the 18th of *January*, and, to my agreeable Surprize, I found many Things mentioned in the Journal which I thought very material to prove a Paſſage which he had altogether concealed in his Letters to me, and found, from his Journal, that he had not made any thing like a Search or Diſcovery of the Coaſt from Cape *Dobbs* to Brook *Cobham*, having not been within 5 or 6 Leagues of the Head-lands, and paſſed a great Part in the Night, and had never once gone aſhore to look for any Inlet, or to try the Height and Direction of the Tides; ſo that all the material Part of the Coaſt, where the Paſſage was expected, had never been look'd into, notwithſtanding he had good Weather, and no Ice, upon his Return from *Wager* River and Cape *Hope*. But what ſurprized me moſt was, that he ſhould have been ſo much impoſed upon or miſtaken (for I then had no doubt of his Integrity or Veracity) as to call or ſuppoſe *Wager* River to be a freſh Water River, when it increaſed as he went up it from 2 to 7 or 8 Leagues wide, and in Depth from 14 to 80 Fathoms, and that it was full of large black Whales at the upper End, which he had alledged to be all frozen, when there were none below, or without the River ; but I ſtill imagined his Miſtake aroſe from the Tide's coming in from the Eaſtward, and from his not meeting a contrary Tide from the Weſtward : However, as theſe Obſervations from his Journal gave me great Hopes that he had been in the Paſſage or Streight, without

out his knowing it to be ſo, and finding that no Part of the Weſtern Coaſt of the *Welcome*, to the Southward of it, had been look'd into at all, and obſerving that there was ſcarcely any Notice taken in the Journal of what the Lieutenant and Maſter had obſerved the laſt time they had gone up, altho' they went 12 Leagues higher than the Captain or they had been before, only ſaying they had ſearched every Inlet, and ſtill found the Tide came from the Eaſtward, and ſaw a great many black Whales. Upon finding ſo ſlight an Obſervation or Minute enter'd in the Journal, upon the only material Part of the Diſcovery, I wrote to him the 22d of *January*, telling him, I imagined he had made a much greater Progreſs in the Diſcovery of a Paſſage than he expected when there, and that from the Light I had got from his Journal, I could almoſt prove that he was in the Paſſage, and that *Wager* River was a Streight, and no River; and the Way he enter'd the Streight was one, tho' not the greateſt and eaſieſt into the Streight: For I muſt conclude that the Whales ſeen there came from the Weſtern Ocean, as far as they could, until the Ice ſtopp'd them, which was forced in from the *Welcome*; and that the Whales at Brook *Cobham*, having no Ice there to prevent their getting into that Part of the Bay, they had got through the Streight from the Weſtern Ocean by a better and eaſier Paſſage to the Southward. That I imagined what had made him miſtake it for a River, was by the Tide's flowing from the Eaſtward, and becauſe he did not meet the Weſtern Tide; but that if he had conſidered it was a Streight, and no immediate Communication with the Weſtern Ocean, he muſt have expected the Eaſtern Tide to riſe, until he had got half way through the Streight, where he would have met the contrary Tide, as it is in *Magellan*'s Streight; that I obſerved the Journal was very ſhort in relating what the Lieutenant and Maſter had obſerved the laſt time they were up, and therefore I expected that he would ſend me under their Hands all they obſerved when they went laſt up; whether the River grew broader or narrower, and what Depth it was; whether they were in every Opening; whether there was more or leſs Ice, or whether it was freſh or ſalt; that I might be able to form a Judgment upon the whole, and know whether it was a River or Streight.

A few Days before I wrote this Letter, I incloſed a Letter to a Friend in *London* to be delivered to a Nobleman of the firſt Diſtinction, to acquaint him of my Intentions of propoſing to have

Settlements made in *Hudſon*'s *Bay*, and to lay open the Trade, and by that means we ſhould recover that Part of our Fur Trade which the Company had loſt to the *French*, and in time ſecure the whole, and break off the Communication between *Canada* and *Miſſiſſippi* through the Lakes; that in caſe he approved of it as a proper Scheme, I ſhould prepare Matters ſo as to go over to *London* and ſet it on foot, and as I then expected that I ſhould have great Aſſiſtance from Captain *Middleton*, I deſired him to ſhew my Letter to the Captain before he ſealed and delivered it as directed. This he ſaw ſoon after he had ſent me the former diſcouraging Letter; but then, finding I was reſolved to ſtir in it, he thought it would be impolitick in him to oppoſe it, leſt he ſhould be ſuſpected of being in Friendſhip with the Company; ſo he ſaid the Diſcouragement he gave me in his former Letter aroſe from his Opinion that I could not break the Company's Charter; but if that could be done, then the ſettling the Rivers upon the Bay would be practicable.

Whilſt this Correſpondence was carrying on, before I got his Anſwer, or mine could reach him in *London*, I received an anonymous Letter, dated the 21ſt of *January*, from *London*, the Day before the Date of mine to the Captain, from two Gentlemen who had been in the Voyage with him, who deſired me to direct to them under feigned Names, as they did not deſire to be known, until it might be proper for them to own who they were. Theſe Gentlemen finding him reſolved to ſtifle the Diſcovery, diſguiſing and altering his Charts, making out frozen Streights where there were none, and cloſing up Streights, and making Rivers and Mainland, where there were Opens, and broken Lands, and making and altering the Direction of the Tides and Currents, to anſwer the End he deſigned, and that he concealed a great Part of what he had diſcovered; having had Reaſon to ſuſpect his Conduct before upon the Voyage, thought it ſcandalous, and Injuſtice to the Publick, to conceal what they knew, and as they knew his Correſpondence with me, one of them having been employed in writing his Anſwers to me, by which they found how he endeavoured to impoſe upon me by falſifying Facts, thinking it unjuſt to have me impoſed upon ſo ſcandalouſly, after all the Pains I had been at in promoting ſo beneficial a Diſcovery, they thought it a Piece of Juſtice to the Publick, and to me, to acquaint me with his Views, and

put

put me upon a Scrutiny into his Conduct, and accordingly wrote to me in a feigned Character and Stile in the following Terms.

S I R, *January* 21, 1742-3.

THIS Script is only to open your Eyes, which have been sealed or closed with too much (we cannot say Cunning) Artifice, so as they have not been able to discover our Discoverer's Pranks. All Nature cries aloud there is a Passage, and we are sure there is one from *Hudson's Bay* to *Japan*. Send a Letter directed to Messieurs *Brook* and *Cobham*, who are Gentlemen who have been the Voyage, and cannot bear so glorious an Attempt should die under the Hands of mercenary Wretches, and they will give you such pungent Reasons as will awake all your Industry. They desire it may be kept secret so long as they shall think fit; they are willing to venture their Lives, their Fortunes, their All, in another Attempt; and they are no inconsiderable Persons, but such as have had it much at Heart ever since they saw the Rapidity of the Tides in the *Welcome*. The frozen Streights is all Chimera, and every thing you have ever yet read or seen concerning that Part of our Voyage. We shall send you some unanswerable Queries. Direct for us at the *Chapter Coffee-house, St. Paul's Churchyard, London.*

This I answered as desired the fifth of *February*, which happened to be the very Day the Captain answered my former Letter, desiring them to send me over the Queries they mentioned, and upon the Receipt of them I should be ready to go over and give my best Assistance in prosecuting the Discovery.

The Captain got my Letter of the 22d of *January*, and my Friend seeing him soon after, he found him very much chagrined. He said he wished I would lay aside Thoughts of the Passage, that I gave myself a great deal of Trouble to no Purpose, it being quite impracticable; but upon his pressing him to send me an Answer, he said he would do it as soon as he could, but the Person who wrote for him was out of Town; but upon his pressing him to send it by him, as he was to go soon for *Ireland*, he at last got his Answer the Morning he came away, and also a Copy inclosed of his Warrant to the Lieutenant and Master, and the Report they signed upon their Return, after they had been up the River, which I have already given; but his Answer being very extraordinary, affirming

2 several

ſeveral Facts which were abſolutely falſe, with a Deſign to impoſe upon me, by my depending on his Veracity, which muſt conſequently oblige me to give up all future thoughts of the Paſſage, it will be proper to give it in his own Words, and afterwards ſhew the Falſities he affirms in it.

S I R,

I Received yours of the 22d of *January*, and ſaw the Letter you incloſed in Mr. *Smith*'s to the Lord-------concerning opening the Trade to the Bay.

You ſay I have made a much greater Progreſs in the Diſcovery of a Paſſage than I imagined when there, and that from the Light you have got from my Journal, you can almoſt prove that I was in the Paſſage, and that *Wager* River is properly *Wager* Streight, and not a freſh Water River, and that the Way I enter'd it was one, tho' not the greateſt and eaſieſt Way into the Streight.

You alſo obſerve, that if there is a Communication between the Bay and the Weſtern *American* Ocean, or Paſſage through Iſlands and broken Lands, as in the *Magellanick* Streights, the Tide will continue to riſe until we get half way through, and then meet the Tide of the other Ocean. This I thought of when there, made ſeveral Trials, and ordered my Officers to do the ſame, not only near *Deer Sound*, but in their Progreſs up the River as far as they went, and to take notice of the Flux of the Tides, their Direction and Height, as you will find incloſed here. Now, as by mine and their Obſervations it flowed at *Savage Sound* 15 Feet, and the ſame Day but 10 Feet at *Deer Sound*, and 15 Leagues above *Deer Sound*, on the Weſt Side, but 6 Feet. The Tides kept their regular Courſe as high up as I was myſelf, which was 5 Leagues above *Deer Sound*, about 7 Hours Ebb, and 5 Hours Flood, 20 Leagues up. Whereas, if there had been a Tide from the Weſtward to have met this, it muſt have raiſed the Tide higher the farther we went up, as it does in *Narborough*'s Account of the before mentioned Streight, and the Flood would not run above two Hours as he found it there. All theſe Obſervations confirmed me that it could not be a Streight as you ſeem to think.

The Whales we ſaw in the River *Wager* certainly come in at the Mouth of that River where the Ships enter'd it; for we ſaw ſeveral in the *Welcome*, and ſome off from Cape *Dobbs*, after we came

out, and before we went in. The high Land and deep Water gave me great Hopes before I tried the abovementioned Tides. Brook *Cobham* was covered with Snow when we went out, but in our Return home there was none upon it. The Snow on the Land in the River *Wager* was much wasted before we got out of it, especially upon the Tops of the Mountains, but in the Valleys it lay very thick, and froze so hard, as to be able to bear Waggons and Horses.

As to any Passage or broken Lands between the River *Wager* and Lat. 62°. 40′. I am certain that I searched that Coast very narrowly, and stood into every Bay all along, so near, that the *Indians* I had on board knew all the Coast, and would have had me to set them on Shore at Cape *Fullerton*, for they knew their Way to *Churchill*, and had that Way travelled several times in the Summer, which they could not have done, had it consisted of Islands or Rivers; for they have no Canoes, neither is there any Wood to raft them over, as the *Indians* do to the Southward.

The Copy of the Lieutenant's and Master's Report I have here inclosed, and what is wanting in their Relation I shall mention here. The River, 5 Leagues above *Deer Sound*, is 8 or 10 Leagues broad; the Channel is 70 or 80 Fathoms deep in the Middle, and lieth near N. W. by the true Chart, as far as they went up, and met with as much Ice or more than we had below where the Ships lay. I went several times up the River myself, but all was so choak'd with Ice, that I could but once get over to the West Shore; so that 'tis my Opinion that the River cannot be above one Week or two at most clear of Ice in a Year, and many Years not clear at all.

There must be Land to the Westward, and a very great Tract of Land, from the Reasons I mentioned in the Observations of the Effects of Cold. Whilst the Wind blows from the N. W. Quarter, the Air is continually frozen, by the Winds passing over Mountains perpetually covered with Snow. The Land from the Waterside ascends gradually up into the Country, and is very high, as I saw from off some very high Mountains above *Deer Sound*.

This is all I have time to think upon at present, but I should be heartily glad you could dissolve the Company, for they have used me, and all my Men who were with me, very ill; and those who voluntarily enter'd with me at *Churchill* they refuse to pay their

Wages due, neither can I get any Money for my Servants whom I formerly put into their Service. There are many other Things which have been very fatiguing to me, and no doubt will be tiresome to you; therefore beg leave you will conclude me to be, as I really am, with great Reſpect,

London, Feb. 5, 1742-3.

Sir, Your moſt obedient humble Servant,
Chriſtopher Middleton.

As this Letter was wrote with a Deſign to impoſe upon me, and make me believe many Falſities and falſe Reaſonings, I muſt make Obſervations upon each particular Paragraph ſeparately.

The firſt of his Reaſons for its being a River, and no Streight, is from its flowing leſs the higher they went up, as from 15 Feet at *Savage Sound*, where the Ships lay, to 10 Feet at *Deer Sound*, the ſame Tide; and at the Weſt End, 15 Leagues higher, but ſix Feet, which he alledges was contrary to my Obſervation, and *Narborough*'s Account of the Tides in *Magellan*'s Streight, which were higher in the Middle of the Streight. Now theſe Obſervations are falſe; for I did not ſay the Tides would be higher the nearer they came to the Middle of the Streight, but that they would continue to riſe and flow from the Eaſtward, until they met the contrary Tide, if it were a Streight. And *Narborough* expreſly ſays the contrary, that it roſe 4 Fathom at the Eaſt Entrance, 10 Feet within the ſecond Narrow, and near the Middle 8 or 9 Feet. Nor were the Tides in *Wager* River the ſeveral Heights he mentions; for by his Journal the Tide at *Savage Sound* roſe that Tide but 12 Feet 6 Inches, inſtead of 15, when it roſe 10 Feet in *Deer Sound*; and when they were beyond the Weſt Bluff they did not ſtay a Tide, and could only conjecture how much it flowed; nor did they obſerve in their Report whether the Eaſtern or Weſtern Current was Ebb or Flood; tho' now, upon Recollection, the Lieutenant is poſitive it was the Tide of Flood from the Weſtward which brought the Boat to a Grapnel, it having flowed ſix Feet immediately after he anchored the Boat; nor are his Reaſonings juſt about the Time of the Tide's flowing; for tho' *Narborough* ſays there was but 2 Hours each Tide, without any Ripling or Current to affect the Navigation, he does not ſay that it flowed 2 Hours, and ebbed 10; nor does it any where appear how long

it

it flowed in *Wager* River at the upper End: For what he mentions was only at *Deer Sound*, and the Entrance of the River, where he ſays, that in each Place it flowed but 5 Hours, and ebbed 7; whereas, by his own Principles, if it had been a freſh River, the Flood would ſtill have been in ſhorter Time, and the Current or Ebb longer, the higher they went up. So that neither his Reaſoning nor Facts are true to prove it a River, nor his Recital from *Narborough* juſt.

The next Falſity he would have impoſed upon me was, that the Whales came in certainly at the Eaſt Entrance of *Wager* River; for they ſaw ſeveral in the *Welcome*, and near Cape *Dobbs*, before they went in, and after they came out, which none on board ſaw but himſelf; and the Journal expreſly ſays, when they came up with the Ice, Hitherto have we ſeen no Whales except one white Whale as big as a Grampus, and 5 or 6 Seals; and both Logg-book and Journal are intirely ſilent about any when they came out, until they came near Brook *Cobham*. When I taxed the Captain with this, all he could ſay was, he was ſure he heard one or two blow. Yet in the Logg-book which he has printed he ſays he ſaw 2 or 3 blow in that Watch, tho' nothing of it is enter'd in the original large Logg-book, nor were any ſeen by any other Perſon on board the *Furnace*; nor did Captain *Moor* in the *Diſcovery* ſee any, tho' two on board him took upon them to ſwear they ſaw or heard 2 or 3 blow.

The next Falſity he advances is, that tho' the Snow was thawed and waſted upon the Tops of the Mountains in *Wager* River when they were there, yet it froze ſo hard in the Valleys as to carry Waggons and Horſes; whereas, except in ſuch Places where the Sun could not come at it, there was no Ice in the Valleys, but all the Ponds and Lakes were free from Ice, and full of Trouts and other Fiſh.

The next Falſity he aſſerts is, that there was no Paſſage or broken Lands betwixt *Wager* River and Lat. 62°. 40'. for he had ſearched narrowly every Bay, and ſtood in ſo cloſe, that the *Indians* on board him knew all the Coaſt, and deſired to be put on Shore at Cape *Fullerton*, for they knew the Way from that to *Churchill*, and had travelled it ſeveral times by Land in Summer, which they could not have done if there was any Openings or Streight, having no Canoes there, or Timber to make Rafts. Now

 this

this was a glaring and abſolute Falſity throughout; for it appears from his Logg-book and Journal, that he was not nearer any of the Head-lands than 5 or 6 Leagues, that he allows there were many deep Bays and Iſlands, and that he paſſed from Cape *Dobbs* to the Southward of Cape *Fullerton* in the Night, and by his Logg-book it appears that he was 8 Leagues off Shore, when off the Bay between that and Brook *Cobham*, and his Men who were on board him could ſcarce ſee the Land but like Clouds at a Diſtance in the Haze; and he himſelf in Council owned that it was all broken Lands and Iſlands when he left his frozen Streight. And it appears alſo that he knew it to be ſo as well from Governor *Norton* as from *Scroggs*'s Crew, and the *Indians* who were on board *Scroggs*, and might have alſo known the ſame from his own *Indians*, had he conſulted them; for in his Letter to me of *October* 18, 1739, he ſays,

I was this Year at *Churchill* Factory, where Mr. *Norton* is Governor; he was along with *Scroggs* in the Year 1722, and remembers very well, that when they came to an anchor in the *Welcome*, near the Latitude of 65°. they had 12 Fathom at high Water, and but 7 Fathom at low Water; and he ſeems confident, from a View that he took from a Promontary aſhore, that there muſt be a clear Paſſage; the Land is very high, and falls off to the Southward of the Weſt. This Year ſome of the Natives who came down to trade at *Churchill*, and had never been before at any of our *Engliſh* Settlements, informed him they frequently traded with *Europeans* on the Weſt Side of *America*, near the Latitude of *Churchill* by their Account; which ſeems to confirm that the two Seas muſt meet. I remain, *&c.*

Chriſtopher Middleton.

In another of his Letters of the 21ſt of *January* 1737, he ſays, That the Company think it their Intereſt rather to prevent than forward new Diſcoveries in that Part of the World, and for that Reaſon they won't ſuffer any of our Journals to be made publick. All the Intimation I am able to give is, that the Tides riſe more with a North and North-weſt Wind, at Neap-Tides, than ever the Spring-Tides do at *Churchill*, or *Albany*, with a Southerly or Eaſterly Wind; and as there's little or no Tide between *Mansfield* and *Cary's Swan's Neſt*, nor any in the N. or N. N. W. of

Mill

Mill Isles, in that Bay, it must come from the *Welcome*, which cannot be far from some Western Ocean; also in Mr. *John Scroggs*'s Journal of 1722, he mentions, that in Lat. 64°. 50′. the Tide ebbed five Fathoms, but gives no Account which Way, or from whence the Tide came; and they all agree, that a great many Whales are seen in the *Welcome*, whereas I don't remember to have seen any in other Parts of *Hudson's Bay*, and I have been in all Parts of it except the *Welcome*, all which are favourable Circumstances: I shall be glad at all Times to contribute what I can to your Information, and beg you'll believe me to be, Sir, *&c.* *Christopher Middleton.*

In another of his Letters of *November* 5th 1737, he mentions the Company's having sent out two Sloops (at my Solicitation) upon the Discovery, they prosecuted their Voyage no farther than Lat. 62°. one fourth North, and returned without making any new or useful Discovery, so far as I can learn; they found a great many Islands, Abundance of black Whales, but no very great Tides, the highest about 2 Fathoms, the Flood coming from the Northward.

In his Extract from *Scroggs*'s Journal of the *Welcome*, he also says, that he had two Northern *Indians* on board, who had been entertained in the Factory all the foregoing Winter, upon the Account of this Discovery; they gave us Intimation of a rich Copper Mine that lay near the Surface of the Earth, and said they could direct the Sloop or Ship to lay her Side to it, where she might land very soon: We had several Pieces of Copper brought to *Churchhill*, which made it evident there is a Mine somewhere in that Country. These *Indians* sketched out the Lands with Charcoal upon a Skin of Parchment, before they left the Factory, and as far as they went they found it agree very well.

He afterwards says, When they returned, which was in a Month's Time, or thereabouts, I examined the Officers and Men. Several had been my Scholars in the Winter to learn Navigation. They told me they saw nothing at these Times they were on Shore to hinder their going further; for when they were eight or ten Miles from *Whalebone Point*, which bore E. N. E. from them, they saw an open Sea, and the Land trenched away to the Southward of the West; this they said to *Scroggs*'s Face as soon as they

they were got on board our Ship at *Churchill*, tho' while they were under his Command, they dissembled it, and said what he pleased to have them. From this, and all other Accounts, it appears there must be a Passage for the Tides from the Western Ocean.

Since these are all from his own Letters, how could he pretend to say it was all a Main-land from *Wager* River to Lat. 62°. 40'. when he passed this Coast in the Night, or how could he say that his *Indians* desired to be set ashore there, when they also gave him the same Account of the Copper Mine and Streight; and all who traded to *Whale Cove* from *Churchill*, said that even there, it was all broken Land and Islands, with Sea behind them and full of Whales; and these *Indians*, when they were put ashore on *Marble Island*, tho' much nearer their own Country, thought they were undone, and would be sacrificed to their Enemies the *Eskimaux*, who were upon that Coast, between them and their own Country. So that his affirming these as true Facts was too gross to be believed.

His next Paragraph is, That he had sent me the Lieutenant and Master's Report of what they had observed, and he would make out what they were deficient in; and in Part of this he says Truth, that five Leagues above *Deer Sound*, the River was 8 or 10 Leagues wide, and 70 or 80 Fathoms deep in the Middle; but then he adds, the Course lay N. W. by the true Chart, when they affirm, that from the Western Bluff, the true Course was near W. S. W. And he farther says, That there was as much Ice or more above, as far as they went, than there was below where the Ships lay; and it was his Opinion that the River could not be clear of Ice above one Week or two in the Year, and some Years not at all; when both the Lieutenant and Master affirmed before the Lords of the Admiralty, that they had no Ice to obstruct their Passage above *Deer Sound*; and when they got up 15 Leagues higher, they saw a noble Streight going W. S. W. without any Ice in it, with high broken Lands on each Side. So that his whole Letter is made up of Falsities, and false Reasoning, to make out his Assertion, that there was no Passage: And to give his Assertions more Weight, he brings in his Theory and Observations upon Cold, to prove the whole a Continent of vast Extent, to the North-westward of the Bay, contrary to the authentick Accounts given by the *Indians* who were at *Churchill* in 1739, who had been at the Western

 Ocean

Ocean of *America*, in the same Latitude of *Churchill*, mentioned in his own Letter.

At the Cloſe of his Letter, in order to take me off from my Purſuit of the Paſſage, he wiſhes that I would attack the Company, and break their Charter, pretending they had uſed him ill, that I might not ſuſpect him of being their Friend, or ſuſpect him for having received any Bribes or Rewards from them, in order to ſtifle the Diſcovery. So that upon the whole it ſeems evident, that his whole Scheme has been to make his Terms with the Company before he ſhould fix the Journal of his Diſcovery, and when that was fixed, he then was to impoſe upon the Publick and me, by publiſhing falſe Charts and Currents, in order to prevent all future Attempts.

From what I have here obſerved of the Diſcoveries made, and the Management during, and ſince the Voyage, to ſtifle and conceal what has been diſcovered, I preſume that ſtrong Preſumptions for a Paſſage will appear to all who impartially conſider the whole; and I hope I may be indulged to ſhew from Reaſon, as well as theſe Obſervations, that theſe Preſumptions are as ſtrong as poſſible, and amount almoſt to a Demonſtration.

Since all great Tides are cauſed by the Attraction of the Sun and Moon upon a great Body of Water in a large Ocean, an Inland-ſea, that does not communicate with the Ocean by ſome very large Opening, can have no Tide in it which can be any way ſenſible, unleſs ſuch Inland-ſea be vaſtly large. The *Mediterranean*, tho' vaſtly large, having but a ſmall Entrance by which it communicates with the Ocean, has no ſenſible Tide, except the irregular Tide at the *Euripus*, now *Negropont*, and a ſmall Tide of about 2 Feet on the North-eaſt and North-weſt Sides of *Italy*; and in the *Baltick* is no Tide at all, altho' there are three Paſſages into it from the Ocean by the *Sound*, and the *Great* and *Little Belt*.

Hudſon's *Bay*, in which are ſuch ſtrong and high Tides, is the only Inland-ſea known, that has ſuch high and rapid Tides, and conſequently muſt have a conſiderable Communication with ſome Ocean or Oceans; if it have only a Communication with the *Atlantic* Ocean by *Hudſon*'s Streight, let us conſider whether that alone can poſſibly raiſe ſuch high Tides as are throughout the whole Bay, but more remarkably on the Weſt and North-weſt Side of the Bay, where the Tides riſe near equally to thoſe at the Entrance of *Hudſon*'s Streight.

This

This Streight at the Entrance is only 13 to 14 Leagues wide from the South Side to *Refolution Ifle*, and a fmall Channel fome Leagues wide, Northward of that Ifland, in which is no great Current. It runs in the Entrance about 5 or 6 Miles in an Hour, and rifes about 18 Feet at Spring-tide. At Cape *Charles*, in the Middle of the Streight, it is about 15 Leagues wide, and has there loft nigh Half its Force. At Cape *Diggs*, the Weft End of the Streight, it is about 20 Leagues wide, and is ftill more diminifhed in its Heighth and Current; and when it enters the Bay at *Cary*'s *Swan's Neft*, it rifes but 6 Feet. Now it is very reafonable it fhould be diminifhed fo, when it is confidered what Space it has to fill in its Courfe fo far; for there is a great Bay or Inlet on the South-weft Side within *Button*'s *Ifle*, and feveral others betwixt Cape *Charles* and Cape *Diggs*, and great Inlets on the North Side; and the Streight being 140 Leagues in Length before it reaches the Bay, it requires a great Current even to fill the Streight, when to thefe is added the Space it has to fill in the great Bays and Inlets above *Mill Ifles*, by Cape *Comfort* and Lord *Wefton*'s *Portland*, it may be eafily conceived to be almoft fpent before it paffes *Manfell*'s *Ifle* and *Cary*'s *Swan's Neft*. How then is it poffible that a Tide or Current, running through fo narrow a Paffage only 5 or 6 Miles an Hour, which is not above 30 Miles each Tide, fhould raife a high Tide, not only for 140 Leagues, befides all the Bays and Inlets on each Side the Streight, and above *Mill Ifles*, but alfo fill a great Inland-fea, above 800 Miles long, and 500 broad? and after it is expanded in the Bay, and the Current loft, fhould be able to raife a Tide on the Weft and North-weft Side of the Bay from 12 to 16 Feet, nay fometimes to 22 Feet? and if *Norton* and *Scroggs* are to be believed, even to 5 Fathom, and occafion fuch rapid Currents as at Brook *Cobham*, *Marble Ifland*, *Wager* River, *&c.* fo as to run there from 4 to 6 and 7 Miles an Hour, if only filled from *Hudfon*'s Streight, when at the fame time the Tide flowing through *Davis*'s Streights, which are above 40 Leagues wide up into *Baffin*'s Bay in Lat. 78°. does not there exceed 5 or 6 Feet any where? Since therefore no other Inland-fea has any fenfible Tide, and even Tide in the South End of *Hudfon*'s *Bay* does not rife above four Feet without a ftrong Wind at North, how can thefe high and rapid Tides be at the North-weft Side without a Communication with fome other Ocean than that which flows through *Hudfon*'s

 Streight.

Streight. When it is alſo known that a North and North-weſt Wind raiſes a higher Tide on the Weſt Side of the Bay at Neap Tides, than an Eaſterly or South-eaſt Wind does at Spring Tides, which blows from our Ocean, does not that almoſt amount to a Demonſtration without farther corroborating Proofs? But when all other Circumſtances coincide with theſe, ſuch as the great Number of Whales ſeen on the North-weſt Side, tho' none are ever ſeen in other Parts of the Bay or Streight, and that all that Part of the Coaſt, from Lat. 60°. to *Wager* Streight, is found to be broken Land and Iſlands, and a Tide flowing from the Weſt has been found at *Marble Iſland* and the Weſt End of *Wager* Streight, and a Weſt Moon makes high Water from *Marble Iſland* to *Wager* Streight, which ſhews they are all equally near the Ocean, and a W. S. W. Moon at *Whale Cove*, which being earlier, ſhews it is nigher the Ocean, where an open Sea has been diſcovered Weſtward of theſe Iſlands, and the Atteſtation of the *Indians* who have been at the Copper Mine, and there being no Ice there to obſtruct Navigation when all other Parts of the Bay is choak'd with Ice; all theſe Things concurring, gives as great a Certainty for a Paſſage as any thing can do but an actual paſſing and Return through it.

For theſe Reaſons, and from Captain *Middleton*'s Behaviour during his Voyage, and the Care he has taken to ſtifle all the material Parts of the Diſcovery ſince his Return, and from the Weakneſs of his Defence, wherein he has been obliged to advance ſeveral Falſhoods, and has evaded artfully where he could not anſwer to the Charges brought againſt him; and has alſo given all the intimidating Accounts he could well imagine to prevent any others from proſecuting the Diſcovery, it ſeems evident that both the *Hudſon*'s *Bay* Company and he are convinced there is a Paſſage, and are equally afraid of being detected in having neglected and prevented the Diſcovery of it: For if there is no Paſſage, and Captain *Middleton* has acted a fair Part, they are acting with the greateſt Imprudence, and againſt their Intereſt; for nothing can ſo effectually eſtabliſh his Character, and ſhew that the Company have done their Duty to the Publick, as to have other Ships to go out and try it; for if they ſhould ſhew that there is none, then it would appear that the Captain had behaved well, and the Company would not be deemed faulty in having concealed and neglected ſo beneficial a Diſcovery, and all the Blame would be laid

at my Door in puſhing on a ſecond Attempt unreaſonably, and my Character muſt ſuffer, and the next Voyage determine every thing againſt me; ſo that by ſending Ships to make another Attempt it is brought to this Criſis: If there is no Paſſage, the Falſeneſs of my Reaſonings and Obſervations, and my Charge againſt him will be expoſed, and his Character be eſtabliſhed; but if there is a Paſſage, he is in the right to ſtruggle hard to prevent a farther Attempt, for then both his Miſconduct and the Company's Neglect in finding it will be detected; and if ſo, a corrupt Correſpondence would be laid to their Charge, in endeavouring to prevent the Publick from a Diſcovery which would be of great Importance in adding to the Wealth and Power of *Britain.*

As a farther Proof of this Paſſage, I ſhall here give *De Fonte*'s Letter, Vice-Admiral of *Peru* and *Mexico*, giving an Abſtract of his Voyage from *Lima* in *Peru*, to prevent, or ſeize upon, any Ships who ſhould attempt to find a North-weſt Paſſage to the *South-Sea*, as I took it from the Memoirs of the Curious publiſhed in *April* and *June* 1708, having only abridged it a little in his Way to *California*, that not being material towards the Diſcovery, and alter'd the Expreſſion from the firſt to the third Perſon.

A LET-

A LETTER FROM *BARTHOLOMEW de FONTE*, VICE-ADMIRAL of *Peru* and *Mexico*:

GIVING

An ABSTRACT of his VOYAGE from *Lima* in *Peru*, to prevent or ſeize upon any Ships who ſhould attempt to find a NORTH-WEST PASSAGE to the *South-Sea*.

THE Viceroys of *New Spain* and *Peru* having Advice from the Court of *Spain*, that the Attempt for the finding a North-weſt Paſſage, which had been tried before by *Hudſon* and *James*, was again attempted in 1639 by ſome induſtrious Navigators from *Boſton* in *New-England*, Admiral *De Fonte* received Orders from *Spain*, and the Viceroys to equip four Ships of Force, and being ready, he put to Sea the 3d of *April*, 1640, from *Lima*, the Admiral in the Ship *St. Spiritus*, the Vice-Admiral, *Don Diego Peneloſſa*, in the *St. Lucia*, *Pedro de Barnarda* in the *Roſaria*, and *Philip de Ronquillo* in the *King Philip*. The 7th of *April*, at 5 in the Evening, he got to *St. Helen*, in 2°. South Lat. where he took in a Quantity of Bitumen or Tar, by way of Medicine againſt the Scurvy and Dropſy. The 10th he paſſed the *Equi-*

nox at Cape *del Paſſao*, the 11th Cape *St. Franciſco*, in 1°. 7′. N. Lat. and anchored at the Mouth of the River *St. Jago*, and took in there ſeveral Refreſhments. The 16th he ſailed from thence to the Port and Town *Ralco*, 320 Leagues W. N. W. Weſterly, in about 11°. 14′. N. Lat. It is a ſafe Port, covered from the Sea by the Iſlands *Ampallo* and *Mangreza*, both well inhabited by *Indians*; *Ralco* is but 4 Miles over Land to the Head of the Lake *Nicaragua*, that falls into the North Sea in 12°. N. Lat. near the Corn or Pearl Iſlands: Here being Plenty of fine Timber, he bought four Shallops, built expreſly for ſailing and rowing, about 12 Tons each, 32 Feet in the Keel. The 26th he ſailed from thence to *Saragua*, within the Iſlands and Shoals of *Chamilli*, in 17°. 31′. N. Lat. 480 Leagues N. W. by W. from *Ralco*. From *Saragua* and *Compoſtella*, near this Port he took in a Maſter and ſix Mariners, uſed to trade with the Natives on the Eaſt Side of *California* for Pearl, which the Natives catch on a Bank in Lat. 29°. North from the *Baxas St. Juan*, in 24°. N. Lat. 20 Leagues N. N. E. from Cape *St. Lucas*, the S. E. Point of *California*. The Maſter, the Admiral had hired with his Veſſel and Mariners, informed him that 200 Leagues North from Cape *St. Lucas*, a Flood from the North had met the South Flood, and he was ſure it muſt be an Iſland. *Don Diego Peneloſſa* undertook with his Ship and the four Shallops, to diſcover whether *California* was an Iſland or not, along with the Maſter and his Mariners they hired at *Saragua*; but Admiral *de Fonte*, with three Ships, ſailed from them within the Iſles of *Chamilly* the 10th of *May* 1640; and having got the length of Cape *Abel* on the W. S. W. Side of *California* in 26°. N. Lat. 160 Leagues N. W. by W. from the Iſles *Chamilly*, the Wind ſprung up at S. S. E. a ſteady Gale; that from the 26th of *May* to the 14th of *June*, he had ſailed to the River *Los Reys* in 53°. N. Lat. not having Occaſion to lower a Top-ſail in ſailing 866 Leagues N. N. W. 410 Leagues from Port *Abel* to Cape *Blanco*, and 456 to *Rio los Reys*, and ſailed about 260 Leagues in crooked Channels amongſt Iſlands, named, *the Archipelago de St. Lazarus*, where the Ships Boats always ſailed a Mile a-head, ſounding to ſee what Water, Sand and Rocks there were. The 22d of *June* Admiral *Fonte* diſpatched one of his Captains to *Pedro de Barnarda*, to ſail up a fair River,

ver, a gentle Stream and deep Water; he went firſt N. and N. E. N. and N. W. into a large Lake full of Iſlands, and one very large Peninſula full of Inhabitants, a friendly honeſt People in this Lake. He named it *Lake Velaſco*, where Captain *Bernarda* left his Ship; nor all up the River was it leſs than 4, 5, 6, 7 and 8 Fathom Water, both the Rivers and Lakes abounding with Salmon, Trouts, and white Perch, very large, ſome two Foot long, and with three large *Indian* Boats called Periaguas, made of two large Trees, 50 and 60 Foot long, Captain *Bernarda* firſt failed from his Ships in the Lake *Velaſco* 140 Leagues Weſt, and then 436 E. N. E. to 77°. N. Lat. Admiral *de Fonte*, after he had diſpatched Captain *Bernarda* on the Diſcovery of the North and Eaſt Part of the *Tartarian* Sea, ſailed up a very navigable River, which he named *Rio los Reys*, that ran neareſt N. E. but on ſeveral Points of the Compaſs 60 Leagues, at low Water, in a fair navigable Channel, not leſs than 4 or 5 Fathom Water; it flowed in both Rivers near the ſame Water, in the River *los Reys* 24 Foot Full and Change of the Moon, a S. S. E. Moon made high Water; it flowed in the River *de Haro* 22 Foot and a half Full and Change. They had two Jeſuits with them who had been on their Miſſion to 66°. N. Lat. and had made curious Obſervations. The Admiral *de Fonte* received a Letter from Captain *Bernarda*, dated the 27th of *June* 1640, that he had left his Ship in the Lake *Velaſco*, betwixt the Iſland *Bernarda* and the Lake *Conibaſſet*, a very ſafe Port; he went down a River from the Lake three Falls, 80 Leagues, and fell into the *Tartarian* Sea in 61°. with the *Pater* Jeſuits and 36 Natives in three of their Boats, and 20 of his *Spaniſh* Seamen, that the Land trended away N. E. that they ſhould want no Proviſions, the Country abounding with Veniſon of three Sorts, and the Sea and Rivers with excellent Fiſh, (Bread, Salt, Oil and Brandy they carried with them) that he ſhould do what was poſſible. The Admiral, when he received that Letter, was arrived at an *Indian* Town called *Conaſſet*, on the South Side of the Lake *Belle*, where the two *Pater* Jeſuits on their Miſſion had been two Years, a pleaſant Place. The Admiral, with his two Ships, entered the Lake the 22d of *June*, an Hour before high Water, and there was no Fall or Cataract, and 4 or 5 Fathom Water, and 6 and 7 generally in the Lake *Belle*: There is a little Fall of Water till half Flood, and an Hour and Quarter before

before high Water, the Flood begins to ſet gently into the Lake *Belle*. The River is freſh at 20 Leagues Diſtance from the Mouth or Entrance of the River *Los Reys*. The River and Lake abounds with Salmon, Salmon Trouts, Pikes, Perch and Mullets, and two other Sorts of Fiſh peculiar to that River, admirable good, and Lake *Belle* alſo abounds with all thoſe Sorts of Fiſh large and delicate; and Admiral *de Fonte* ſays, the Mullets catch'd in *Rios Reys* and Lake *Belle*, are much delicater than are to be found, he believes, in any Part of the World. The 1ſt of *July* 1640 the Admiral ſailed (from the Ships in the Lake *Belle* in a good Port covered by a fine Iſland, before the Town *Conaſſet*) from thence to a River he named *Parmentiers*, after his Comrade Mr. *Parmentiers*, who had exactly marked every Thing in and about that River, and paſs'd eight Falls, in all 32 Feet perpendicular from its Source out of Lake *Belle*; it falls into the large Lake he called *Lake de Fonte*, at which Place they arrived the 6th of *July*; this Lake is 160 Leagues long and 60 broad; the Length is E. N. E. and W. S. W. 20, 30, and in ſome Places 60 Fathoms deep; the Lake abounds with excellent Cod and Ling, very large and well fed; there are ſeveral very large Iſlands, and ten ſmall ones; they are covered with ſhrubby Woods; the Moſs grows 6 or 7 Foot long, with which the Mooſe, a very large Sort of Deer are fat in the Winter, and other leſſer Deer, as Fallow, &c. There are abundance of wild Cherries, Straw-berries, Hurtle-berries, and wild Currants, and alſo of wild Fowl, Heath-cocks and Hens, likewiſe Partridges and Turkeys, and Sea Fowl in great Plenty; on the South Side of the Lake is a very large fruitful Iſland, which had a great many Inhabitants, and very excellent Timber, as Oak, Aſh, Elm and Fir Trees, very large and tall. The 14th of *July* they ſailed out of the E. N. E. End of the Lake *de Fonte*, and paſſed a Lake he named *Eſtricho de Ronquillo*, 34 Leagues long, 2 or 3 broad, 20, 26 and 28 Fathom Water; they paſſed this Streight in 10 Hours, having a ſtout Gale of Wind and whole Ebb, as they ſailed more Eaſterly, the Country grew very ſenſibly worſe, as it is in the North and South Parts of *America*; from 36 to the extreme Parts, North or South, the Weſt differs not only in Fertility, but in Temperature of Air, at leaſt 10 Degrees, and it is warmer on the Weſt Side than on the Eaſt, as the beſt *Spaniſh* Diſcoverers found it, whoſe Buſineſs it was, as it is noted by *Alvarez*

Acoſte

Acoste and *Mariana*. The 17th they came to an *Indian* Town, and the *Indians* told their Interpreter, Mr. *Parmentiers*, that a little Way from them lay a great Ship, where there never had been one before; they sailed to them, and found only one Man advanced in Years, and a Youth; the Man was the greatest Man in the mechanical Parts of the Mathematicks he had ever met with. The Admiral's second Mate was an *Englishman*, an excellent Seaman, as was his Gunner, who had been taken Prisoner in *Campeachy*, as well as the Master's Son. They told him the Ship was of *New-England*, from a Town call'd *Boston*. The Owner and the whole Ship's Company came on board the 30th, and the Navigator of the Ship, Captain *Shapley*, told him his Owner was a fine Gentleman, and Major General of the largest Colony in *New-England*, called *the Massachusets*; so he received him like a Gentleman, and told him, his Commission was to make Prize of any People seeking a North-west or West Passage into the *South-Sea*, but he would look upon them as Merchants trading with the Natives for Beavers, Otters, and other Furs and Skins, and so for a small Present of Provisions he had no need of, he gave him his Diamond Ring, which cost him 1200 Pieces of Eight, (which the modest Gentleman received with Difficulty) and having given the brave Navigator, Captain *Shapley*, for his fine Charts and Journals, 1000 Pieces of Eight, and the Owner of the Ship, *Seimor Gibbons*, a Quarter Cask of good *Peruan* Wine, and the 10 Seamen each 20 Pieces of Eight, the 6th of *August*, with as much Wind as they could fly before, and a Current, they arrived at the first Fall of the River *Parmentiers*. The 11th of *August* eighty six Leagues, and was on the South Side of the Lake *Belle*, on board their Ships, the 16th of *August*, before the fine Town *Conasset*, where they found all Things well, and the honest Natives of *Conasset* had in his Absence treated his People with great Humanity, and Captain *De Ronquillo* answered their Civility and Justice. The 26th of *August* an *Indian* brought him a Letter to *Conasset*, on the Lake *Belle*, from Captain *Bernarda*, dated the 11th of *August*, where he sent him word he was returned from his cold Expedition, and did assure him there was no Communication out of the *Spanish* or *Atlantick* Sea by *Davis*'s Streight; for the Natives had conducted one of his Seamen to the Head of *Davis*'s Streight, which terminated in a fresh Lake of about 30 Miles in Circumference, in the 80th Degree N. Lat. and that there was prodigious

 Mountains

Mountains North of it; besides, the North-west from that Lake, the Ice was so fixed from the Shore to 100 Fathom Water, for ought he knew from the Creation, for Mankind knew little of the wonderful Works of God, especially near the North and South Poles. He wrote farther, that he had sailed from *Basset Island* N. E. and E. N. E. and N. E. by E. to the 79th Degree of Latitude, and then the Land trended North, and the Ice rested on the Land. He received afterwards a second Letter from Captain *Bernarda*, dated from *Minhanset*, informing him he made the Port of *Arena*, 20 Leagues up the River *Los Reyes*, the 26th of *August*, where he waited his Commands. The Admiral having Store of good salt Provisions of Venison and Fish that Captain *De Ronquillo* had salted, by the Admiral's Orders, in his Absence, and 100 Hogsheads of *Indian* Wheat or Maize, he sailed the 2d of *September*, 1640, accompanied with many of the honest Natives of *Conasset*, and on the 5th of *September*, in the Morning, about 8, was at an Anchor betwixt *Arena* and *Minhanset*, in the River *Los Reys*, sailing down that River to the N. E. Part of the *South-Sea*, after that returned home, having found there was no Passage into the *South-Sea* by that they call the North-west Passage. The Chart will make this much more demonstrable.

Tho' the Style of the foregoing Piece is not so polite (being wrote like a Man whose Livelihood depended on another Way, but with Abundance of Experience, and like a Traveller) yet there are in it so many curious, and hitherto unknown Discoveries, that it was thought worthy a Place in these Memoirs, and 'tis humbly presumed it will not be unacceptable to those who have either been in these Parts, or will give themselves the Trouble of reviewing the Chart.

By this Abstract of *De Fonte*'s Voyage, which has all the Appearance of being authentick, it is plain that there is a navigable Passage from *Hudson*'s *Bay* to *California*, and tho' it has not had Justice done to it in the Translation, and probably has not been exactly copied or printed; yet, giving an Allowance for Errors of that kind, and it has throughout the Air of Truth. There may be probably some Errors in the Figures relating to the Degrees of Latitude and Leagues in their Course; for the Length of the Lake *De Fonte* is said to be 160 Leagues, and the Streight *Ronquillo* 34. Upon

Upon his Return from the *Boston* Ship he is said to have got again to the Mouth of the River *Parmentiers* in 5 Days, with a stout Gale and brisk Current, which he says was 80 Leagues, which plainly ought to have been 180, otherwise with that stout Gale and Current it would have been but 16 Leagues in 24 Hours, and the other would be but 36, which was reasonable Sailing.

As to his saying there was no Passage, altho' he met the *Boston* Ship, I take his Meaning to be, that either *Bernarda* found no Passage by the North-west of *Davis*'s Streights, the Way probably the *Spaniards* expected it; or that by his passing up one River to Lake *Belle*, and down another to Lake *De Fonte*, by what he called Sharps or Falls, he apprehended there was no navigable Passage for Ships the Way he went, or he desired to disguise it, to prevent other *Europeans* from attempting it to his Country's Prejudice, and therefore he did not publish his Chart which he refers to in his Letter. It is plain that it was an Island below the Lake *Belle* which divided the River *Los Reys* from the River *Parmentiers*, and as the Sea in Lake *De Fonte* was upon a Level with the Sea at the Mouth of *Rio Los Reys*, and the Tide flowed up that River into the Lake *Belle*, it must also flow up the River *Parmentiers*, and the Sharps and Falls he observed in that River, were only the Sharps occasioned by the several Ebbs he had in sailing down that River, being 5 Days in passing to the Sea; so that the great and true Passage was without that Island, which the Admiral missed by getting among the Islands in the *Archipelago* of St. *Lazarus*.

It is a Misfortune his Chart was not published, which would have given more Light as to the Lands, Lakes and Rivers he mentions, now we can only guess in the Dark, and may be mistaken; however I shall venture to give my Opinion of their Situation, tho' I may not judge right.

As I apprehend it, the *Archipelago* of St. *Lazarus*, and *Rio Los Reys*, and Lake *Belle*, and also the Lake of *Velasco*, are no Part of *North America*, but a Country distinct from it, the Passage lying betwixt those Lands and *America*; for in his Journal he says he sailed 866 Leagues N. N. W. from Cape *Abel* in *California*, in Lat. 26°. the last 260 of which was in crooked Channels among Islands, until he got to *Rio Los Reys*, in Lat. 53°. since by all other Accounts the Coast of *America* falls off N. E. from Cape *Blanco*.

This muſt have been a Country diſtinct from *America*; here he found two Rivers, one came from the North, from the Lake *Velaſco*, which *Bernarda* failed up, and the other came from the N. E. from the Lake *Belle*, which lay betwixt Lat. 54°. and 55°. Upon what Point the River *Parmentiers* ran out of the Lake *Belle* is not mentioned; but as *Rio Los Reys* ran S. W. we may ſuppoſe the other ran E. or S. E. and fell into the Sea which he calls the Lake *de Fonte*, in near the ſame Latitude, that Lake, or Arm of the Sea, ſtretching thence E. N. E. 160 Leagues; if there was any Weſt Variation, as there is now, the N. E. End of that Lake might be in Lat. 57 or 58°. almoſt Weſt of *Churchill*, and the Streight *Ronquillo* running ſtill N. E. might end in Lat. 59°. In two Days from thence he came to an *Indian* Town, probably about Lat. 60°. near which the *Boſton* Ship lay; ſo that it may be imagined that the *Boſton* Ship had paſſed into ſome of the Openings near *Whale Cove*, and got to Lat. 60°. or perhaps to 59°. and was trading for Furs, and the Ship might have been afterwards loſt or ſurprized by the *Eſkimaux* upon her Return, having but 12 or 13 Hands on board, ſince no Account of this Voyage was ever tranſmitted from *Boſton*. Upon Enquiry made by Order of Sir *Charles Wager*, whether any of the Name of *Shapley*, which was the Maſter's Name, lived at that time in *Boſton*, it appeared from ſome Writings that ſome of that Name then lived in *Boſton*, which adds to the Weight of *De Fonte*'s Letter, and confirms its being an authentick Journal.

AN

ABSTRACT

OF

ALL THE DISCOVERIES

Which have been Publiſh'd of the

ISLANDS *and* COUNTRIES

IN THE

Great Weſtern OCEAN,

BETWEEN

AMERICA, *INDIA* and *CHINA*,

AND

How Great a TRACT *yet* remains to be diſcovered

BETWEEN THE

ARCTICK *and* ANTARCTICK CIRCLES:

WITH

The ADVANTAGES to *BRITAIN* from ſuch Diſcoveries, in caſe a PASSAGE ſhould be found from *HUDSON*'s *BAY* to that WESTERN OCEAN, which has lately been undertaken with great Probability of SUCCESS.

AN

ABSTRACT

OF

All the Diſcoveries which have been publiſhed of the Iſlands and Countries in the *Great Weſtern Ocean*, between *America*, *India*, and *China*, &c.

SINCE there are the greateſt Preſumptions of a Paſſage to the Weſtern Ocean, from the late Diſcoveries made on board the *Furnace* in *Wager* River, and in the broken Lands near *Marble Iſland*, it may be proper to take notice of what Diſcoveries have hitherto been made in that great Pacifick Ocean, as it is called, as well in the temperate Zones on each Side of the Tropicks, as between the Tropicks from *America*, on the Eaſt Side of that Sea, to the Coaſt of *Japan*, *China*, the *Philippines*, and *New-Guinea*,

on the Weſt Side of the ſame; and alſo give Reaſons why hitherto ſo few Diſcoveries have been made, or divulged when made, in ſo large a Tract, which makes very near one Third of the Globe; when at the ſame time there are very large Countries, and almoſt an infinite Number of Iſlands diſperſed through it, part only of which have been diſcovered and divulged; and the vaſtly greater Part remains undiſcovered to us in *Europe*, as the greateſt Number of the Iſlands yet diſcovered are extremely populous, and probably moſt of them abound in the ſeveral rich Mines and Commodities found in other Countries in their ſeveral Latitudes, their further Diſcovery, and eſtabliſhing a Commerce with them, may be of immenſe Benefit to *Britain*, in caſe this Paſſage is found, as it will give us a more immediate Paſſage and Courſe to them, than to any other Nation in *Europe*, except the *Spaniards*, who might have a Trade croſs the *Iſthmus* of *America*; and we may have the earlieſt and choiceſt Settlements and Factories in proper Climates, ſecuring to ourſelves the beſt Harbours in the beſt Parts of *America*; from whence we may carry on a Commerce as well to *Japan* and *China*, as to the more Southerly Parts of *America*, and all the Countries and Iſlands in the *South-Sea*, yet to be diſcovered, as far as *New-Guinea* and the *Philippines*.

I ſhall therefore firſt give the Reaſon why ſo little has yet been diſcovered, notwithſtanding the Number of *Engliſh*, *Dutch*, and *Spaniſh* Ships, which have ſailed round the Globe, and many *French* Ships which have been alſo in thoſe Seas; and then ſhall take notice of ſuch Journals as have been publiſhed of thoſe Ships which have been in thoſe Seas, and have made any Diſcovery worth taking notice of; and from theſe Accounts ſhew how much has been diſcovered, and what remains ſtill to be diſcovered, and then propoſe the moſt convenient Places to make Settlements in, from whence further Diſcoveries may be made with the greateſt Hopes of Succeſs, and enumerate ſome of the great Advantages we may reap from ſuch Settlements and Diſcoveries.

The Reaſon why greater Diſcoveries have not been made in that vaſt Tract, notwithſtanding the Number of Ships that have been in thoſe Seas, I take to be this; that moſt of the Ships that went into thoſe Seas, or ſurrounded the Globe, either went to enrich themſelves with the Plunder of the *Spaniards* on the Weſtern *American* Coaſt, or to carry on a clandeſtine Trade with them, or elſe to

 find

find out a ſhort Paſſage to the *Eaſt Indies* and *Moluccoes*, ſo as to avoid the *Portugueſe*, who were at firſt Maſters of the *Indian* Seas, that they might more eaſily come at the Riches of the Eaſt; and therefore all theſe Ships, upon paſſing the *Magellanick* Streights, or thoſe of *Le Mair*, by Cape *Horn*, ſailed cloſe along the *American* Coaſt, to get the ſooner into a warm Latitude, and into the Trade-wind, and alſo to get Wood, and Water, and freſh Proviſions, for their fatigued and ſick Men; and for theſe Reaſons did not attempt Diſcoveries in the Southern temperate Zone, at any Diſtance from the *American* Coaſt, from the Latitude of Cape *Horn*, in near 58 Degrees, to the Latitude of 28 Degrees, where they generally met the Trade-wind; for if they had been at any Diſtance from the Coaſt, when they came into the Trade-wind, they could not then pretend to make the Coaſt, againſt both Wind and Current; therefore all thoſe who went to carry on a clandeſtine Trade, or to plunder the *Spaniards*, kept as cloſe as they could to the *American* Coaſt, and thoſe who went to find a Paſſage to *India*, got out of the variable Winds, into the Trade, as ſoon as they could, and never endeavoured to go farther Weſt than the Iſlands of *John Firnando*, until they got into the Way of the Trade-wind, within 28 Degrees S. Lat.

The *Spaniards*, who were the only People who ſailed in the *South-Sea* to make Diſcoveries, (except 3 *Dutch* Ships ſent by their *Weſt India* Company in 1721) after making ſome, concealed them all they could from the reſt of *Europe*; and where any were publiſhed, took up the whole Impreſſion, finding that the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* had found the Way into thoſe Seas, they being ſenſible that they had diſcovered in *America* more Countries than they were able to protect or defend; and if theſe Countries were diſcovered and divulged, it would have tempted the *Engliſh* and *Dutch* to make Settlements there, which would not only enrich them by their Trade, but enable them to carry on a private Trade with *Peru* and *Chili*, and all their Southern and Weſtern Coaſt, and perhaps diſpoſſeſs them of ſome of their Conqueſts and Settlements, and therefore they took all the prudent Methods they could to check theſe Diſcoveries, and prevent their being divulged; notwithſtanding which, I ſhall ſhew, from what Diſcoveries have been made, that the greateſt Part of theſe Seas are full of rich populous Iſlands, and that there is the greateſt Probability, that in the higher Latitudes in

theſe

thefe temperate Zones, there are great Countries equivalent to Continents, fince the Continent of *America* is only a greater Ifland, and ours of *Europe*, *Afia* and *Africa*, is furrounded by the Sea, and are therefore called Continents, as they are greater than the fmaller Iflands furrounding them; fo all other great Countries or Iflands, furrounded by the Sea, may be called Continents in refpect to the leffer Iflands on their feveral Coafts.

To illuftrate this, and fhew that thefe are the true Reafons why fo few Difcoveries have been made in thofe Seas, I fhall give fhort Extracts from the Journals which have been publifhed of all thofe who have furrounded the Globe, or navigated in thofe Seas, who have made any Difcoveries worth remarking, and then make fome Obfervations upon their Journals.

Magellan, with five Ships, was the firft who failed through thefe Seas in 1519, and found out the Streights called after him, and by that Way paffed to the *Philippines*. He died in *India*, but his Crew were the firft that furrounded the Globe, *Sebaftian de Cano* being Captain. After paffing the Streights he failed near the *American* Coaft, until he got within the Tropicks, and then being in hafte to get to *India*, he did not attempt to make Difcoveries, but failed N. W. from 20 Degrees S. Lat. to 13 Degrees N. Lat. that he might fall in with *India* North of the Line. In his Courfe he faw but 3 Iflands South of the Line, one in 20 Degrees uninhabited, which he called *Copinghar*, another in 15 Degrees, which he called *Sumbdit*, and the third in 5 Degrees South Latitude, and 120 long; the two laft were 200 Leagues afunder; he takes no notice whether thefe laft were inhabited or not. In 13°. N. Lat. and 146°. Long. he difcovered the *Marian* or *Ladrone* Iflands, and in 10°. N. Lat. and 161°. Long. he failed through the *Archipelago* of St. *Lazarre*, a Number of Iflands between the *Marian* and *Philippines*, and thence difcovered the *Philippines*.

Sir *Francis Drake* was the next who circumnavigated the Globe in 1537. He went only with Defign to plunder the *Spaniards*, and therefore coafted *America* as far as *California*, feeing only one Ifland Southweft of *Terra del Fuego*, where he was drove by a Storm. After paffing the Streights, he landed on *California* to refrefh his Men, which he called *Nova Albion*, in about Lat. 38°. in a fine Bay, of which he took Poffeffion for the Crown of *England*, by the Confent of the Natives. He failed from thence for *India*

 South-

Southwefterly, to get into the Trade-wind, and fell in with Land in Lat. 8°. North, among the *Labrone* Iflands, and therefore made no Difcovery, only endeavouring to bring home the Treafure he had got from the *Spaniards* by the fafeft Paffage.

Sir *Thomas Candifh*, in 1586, was the next who failed round the Globe; he alfo made his Courfe along the *American* Coaft, and from the Coaft of *New-Spain* failed Weft for *India*, in the ufual Latitude of 13°. which the *Spaniards* take to the *Philippines*, touching at *Guam*. He failed it in 45 Days, this Courfe being chofen as the readieft and fafeft Paffage, being free from Iflands until they reach *Guam*, and therefore he made no Difcovery.

Noort, a *Dutchman*, was the next, and he alfo kept along the *American* Coaft until he paffed the Line. The 20th of *May* he failed North-weft from 5°. N. Lat. until he got into 15°. the Lat. of *Guam*, and arrived there the 15th of *September*; he therefore, by keeping much the fame Courfe as the others, made no farther Difcovery, but had fome Rain in his Paffage, which is oftener had near Land than in the open Sea, within the Courfe of the Trade-winds.

Spilbergen, another *Dutchman*, in 1614 followed thefe, and coafted *America* until he came to Port *Natividad*, on the *Mexican* Coaft, in Lat. 19°. and failed thence for the *Ladrone* Iflands on the 20th of *November*. The 26th he was in Lat. 20°. 26′. *December* the 3d he faw two Iflands. The 4th he faw a Rock in Lat. 19°. 53 Leagues from the *American* Coaft. The 6th he faw an Ifland, with 5 Hills, and falling into Lat. 13°. he got to *Guam* the 23d of *January*. The four laft went without any View of making Difcoveries, their Defign being to plunder the *Spaniards*.

The next who went was *Schooten*, a *Dutchman*, in 1615, with Defign to find out a new Paffage to *India* by *America*; he found out *Lemair*'s Streight, and the Paffage by Cape *Horn*, in 57°. 48′. S. Lat. He kept in with the *American* Coaft until he arrived at *John Fernando*'s Ifland in 34°. S. Lat. *March* the 3d he left that Ifland, fteering North-weft to get into the Trade-wind, and in 15°. 12′. S. Lat. 925 Leagues from the Coaft of *Peru*, faw an Ifland which he called *Dogs Ifland*. The 14th, 100 Leagues further Weft, in Lat. 15°. he came to another Ifland, where he could get no Ground upon Sounding, and called it *the Ifland without Ground*. It was a low Ifland, full of Cocoas, well inhabited; they were of a

reddiſh Colour, had long black Hair, but having no Anchorage he could not ſtop there. There was no hollow Sea from the South, ſo he apprehended there was more Land to the Southward. On the 16th he got to another low Iſland, but found no Anchorage, 15 Leagues from the other, in Lat. 14°. 46′. he called it *Water Iſland*, but ſaw no Inhabitants in it, it being often overflowed by the Sea. The 18th he ſaw another low Iſland he called *Fly Iſland*, from the vaſt Number of Flies that covered his Boat when he ſent it aſhore, which plagued him on board the Ship for ſome Days. They ſaw ſome Savages on this Iſland; it was in Lat. 15°. The 9th of *May*, in Lat. 15°. 40′. 1510 Leagues from *Peru*, he ſaw a large Boat, like a double Canoe, coming from the Southward, which had 23 Men, Women and Children, in it, of a reddiſh Colour; the Women had ſhort Hair, the Men long, black Hair, curled. After firing at, and killing ſome of them before they would ſubmit, they took them on board, and after detaining them for ſome time, they gave them ſome Trifles, and let them go off; upon which they in the Boat ſailed away S. E. which was probably the Way to their own Country, from whence they came. On the 10th they ſaw a high Iſland S. E. of them, in 16°. 10′. S. Lat. full of Inhabitants, which he called *Cocos Iſland*, and near it another Iſland, which he called *Traitors Iſland*, from the Natives Behaviour to them. On the 14th they ſaw another Iſland, which they called *Hope Iſland*, about 7 Leagues from the other. The 19th they ſailed North, and came to two other Iſlands full of tall Men of a yellowiſh brown Colour, he called it *Horn Iſland*, it was in Lat. 14°. 56′. They ſailed from that Iſland the 1ſt of *June*; the 21ſt they ſaw other Iſlands where the Men were blacker; they had Bows and Arrows, which were the firſt they had ſeen in the *South-Sea*; they were in 4°. 47′. S. Lat. The 25th they ſaw St. *John*'s *Iſle*, 1840 Leagues from *Peru*; this was near the Coaſt of *New-Guinea*, and the Natives were all black.

Le Hermite went from *Holland* with 10 Ships in 1623; he died, and *Scapenham* returned the uſual Courſe by the *Ladrones*.

Dampier, who was among the *Buccaneers* in the *South-Sea* in 1686, alſo coaſted *America*, and made no Diſcoveries, ſeeing no new Iſlands but the *Gallopagos* under the Line, near the *American* Coaſt, which were uninhabited. When he ſail'd for *India*, he

he ſailed in the old Courſe until he came to *Guam*, one of the *Ladrone* Iſlands, and ſaw no Iſlands in his Paſſage.

The *Duke* and *Dutcheſs of Briſtol*, fitted out as Privateers in 1708, coaſted *America* to Cape *St. Lucas* in *California*, in 23°. 10′. N. Lat. and from thence ſailed S. W. until they fell into Lat. 13°. 30′. In Lat. 18°. and 2°. 27′. Weſt from Cape *St. Lucas* they ſaw ſeveral Sea-Fowl, and in Lat. 16°. 32′. and Long. 3°. 46′. they ſaw many Crawfiſh, Symptoms of their being near Iſlands, but they ſaw no Land until they got to *Guam*.

Captain *Shelvock* was alſo fitted out upon the ſame Deſign in 1719, and after loſing his Ship, and many Diſaſters, he touched at 3 Iſlands called *Les tres Marias*, on the *Mexican* Coaſt, near *California*, and afterwards ſailing from Cape *St. Lucas*, diſcovered an Iſland 110 Leagues from it, about 7 or 8 Leagues round, called after him *Shelvock*'s *Iſle*. At 500 Leagues Diſtance they had Weſterly Winds, and then fell into the uſual Courſe to *Guam*.

There are no other Voyages publiſhed, that I have ſeen, of any other Ships that have ſailed round the Globe, except a Voyage lately made by 3 *Dutch* Ships in 1721, who have made conſiderable Diſcoveries, which I ſhall give an Abſtract of, after taking notice of what Diſcoveries have been made and publiſhed by the *Spaniards*, in ſailing from the *Philippines* and *China* to *America*, and of ſome others fitted out in *Peru* and *Mexico* to make Diſcoveries in the Southern Ocean, part of which were publiſhed in *Spain*, but the greater Part kept concealed, and then ſhall mention the *Dutch* Diſcoveries from *Batavia* by *Taſman*.

Gama, in a Voyage he made from *America* to *China*, coaſted a large Country Eaſtward of *Japan*, in about Lat. 45°. but no Account of it is publiſhed that I have ſeen, it being only taken notice of in ſeveral Maps and Charts of thoſe Seas.

The *Dutch* ſeized at the Port of *Namboe*, in Lat. 39°. on the N. E. of *Japan*, were ſtrictly examined, whether their Intention, inſtead of going to *Tartary*, where they ſaid they were ſailing, had not been to find out their golden Iſlands, one of which was 60 Leagues Eaſt of *Yedſo*.

In 1642 the *Dutch* ſent Ships to endeavour to find a Paſſage to *Europe* from *Japan* by *Tartary*; they diſcovered the Streights of *Urias*, and Land North from *Japan*, from Lat. 40°. to 48°. the Land of *Yedſo*. The Inhabitants were of a ſallow Complexion in

Lat. 43°. and were very populous, and the Seas full of Fiſh. In Lat. 44°. 30′. it was mountainy, and full of Silver Mines. In Lat. 46°. it looked like *England*. In Lat. 48°. were ſmall Hills covered with Graſs.

In 1522, one of the Ships that ſailed to the *Moluccas* with *Magellan*, ſailed from *Tidore* to endeavour to get to *New-Spain*, under *Gonzalo Gomes de Spinoſa*; they ſailed N. E. to Lat. 16°. where they found two Iſlands they called *St. John*'s, and in that Courſe came to another Iſland in Lat. 20°. which they called *Griega*, where ſome of the Natives went on board them; they continued their Voyage four Months until they came to Lat. 42°. where they ſaw Seals and Tunnies, Signs of being near Land; they found the Climate very cold after leaving the warm Latitudes; they returned back to *Tidore*.

Saavedra, in croſſing the Line North from *New Guinea*, found an Iſland he called *de los Pintados*, inhabited by painted People, and in Lat. 10°. or 12°. found many more he called *les Jardines*; he intended to have ſailed to *America*, but the Trade Winds prevailing, he could not; he died on the Voyage, and the Ship returned to the *Moluccas*.

In 1542, *Mendoſa* ſent Ships from *New Spain* to the North of *California*, to diſcover the Coaſt near Cape *del Enganno*; they ſailed to the *Sierras Nevados*, or ſnowy Mountains in Lat. 40°. there they pretended they ſaw Ships that had on their Stems Birds they called Alcatrazos, their Yards they ſaid were gilded, and Prows laid over with Silver, ſaid to have come from *China* or *Japan*.

At the ſame time he ſent a Fleet under the Command of *Ruiz Lopez de Villa Lobas*, from *Natividod* to *Mindanao*, one of the *Philippine* Iſlands; the 31ſt of *October*, in their Paſſage, they ſaw the Iſle of *St. Thomas*, which *Grivolga* had before diſcovered, and beyond it in Lat. 17°. they ſaw another they called *Nublada* or the *Cloudy Iſland*; from thence they ſailed to another they called *Roca Partida*; the 3d of *September* they came to certain Flats or Baxas, 6 or 7 Fathom deep; the 15th they got to the Iſlands *de los Reys*, and *de los Canales*, and beyond them other Iſlands in Lat. 10°. in the Midſt of which they anchored, and took in Wood and Water; in *January* they ſailed from thence, and found other Iſlands, where they were ſaluted in the *Spaniſh*

 Tongue,

Tongue, having been chriſtened by Miſſionaries from *India* ; they called theſe the Iſles *de las Cruzes*, or *de los Matelotes.*

Michael Lopez ſailed the 21ſt of *November* 1565 from *Natividad*, and ſailed South-weſterly until he got into North Lat. 9°. looking there for the Iſles *de los Reys*, ſailing between Lat. 9°. and 10°. 50 Days, they ſaw an Iſland inhabited by Fiſhers, and many uninhabited Iſlands: He then altered his Courſe, and got into North Lat. 13°. and on the 17th of *January* got to *Guam.*

Francis de Gualle in paſſing from *China* to *America* in 1584, ſaw the Iſlands *de Lequeo*, 260 Leagues E. by N. from *Formoſa*, which were rich in Gold: In 29°. N. Lat. 70 Leagues Eaſt of *Japan*, he ſaw Iſlands in which were ſeveral Volcanoes; and 30 Leagues farther Eaſt, in Lat. 32°. and 33°. he ſaw four Iſlands; farther Eaſt he ſaid were many Iſlands, in which was Gold, Cotton Cloths and Fiſh; 300 Leagues E. by N. from *Japan*, he found a hollow Sea, which continued ſo for 700 Leagues, until within 200 Leagues of *California* ; from which Time they had no hollow Sea; they ſaw in their Paſſage many Whales, Albicoves and Bonetas, and fell in with Land in Lat. 37°. 30′. which was a fine Country free from Snow; he ſaw the Iſle *St. Auguſtine* in Lat. 30°. 45′. and the Iſle of Cedars in Lat. 28°. 15′. which were near the *Californian* Coaſt.

Cabrillo in 1542, ſailing Northwards along the Coaſt of *California*, came to Cape *Enganno* in Lat. 31°. to Cape *de la Cruz* in 33°. the Town of Canoes in Lat. 35°. Cape *Galena* farther North, and beyond it *Port Poſſeſſion* ; he ſailed to Lat. 44°. North.

Gemelli took his Paſſage on board the Ship trading from the *Philippines* to *Acapulco* in 1697; he ſailed the 29th of *June* from *Cavite* in *Manila* ; on the 1ſt of *Auguſt* he met the *Acapulco* Ship at the Streights of *Manila* ; the 6th of *September* he ſaw the *Marian* Iſlands in 19°. 20′. N. Lat. theſe, by others called the *Ladrones*, ſtretch from *Japan* to the Line; the 25th being in Lat. 29°. 3′. they ſaw two ſmall Rocks in about Lat. 30°. the 30th they were in Lat. 31°. 58. their Courſe N. E. by E. in Lat. 30°. there is an Iſland they apprehended to be rich in Gold; *October* 3d they were in Lat. 33°. 20′. they ſaw two Ducks and ſmall Birds, ſuppoſed to come from an Iſland called *Rica de Plata* ; which was then about 30 Leagues Diſtance from them; they were

were then in Lat. 34°. 7'. the 12th they were in Lat. 37°. 44'. the Sky was cloudy, and then had ſmall Rain; 36°. 42'. is the higheſt Latitude they chooſe to ſail in, during that Voyage to *California*. The *St. Joſeph*, a *Spaniſh* Ship, was in a former Voyage forced upon an unknown Iſland in Lat. 18°. 20'. which they named *St. Sebaſtians*; the Iſland was ſmall, plain, and full of pleaſant Trees; the 21ſt they were in Lat. 36°. 37'. where they ſaw a Dove they ſuppoſed came from *Donna Maria Laxara*, an Iſland in Lat. 31°. theſe were not Land Doves, but a Sea-fowl, being web-footed; the 25th, being in Lat. 35°. 10'. they had Rain and Thunder, and ſuppoſed they were near ſome Land; the 31ſt in Lat. 36°. 40'. they ſaw a Piece of wrought Wood; *November* 3d, they ſaw more Wood; the 14th in Lat. 38°. they ſaw a large Branch of a Tree; the 15th they ſaw ſeveral tunny Fiſh uſually ſeen near Land; the 19th in Lat. 39°. 38'. they ſaw 50 Ducks; the 20th it hail'd for the firſt Time in the Voyage; they ſuppoſed they were then within 80 Leagues of Cape *Mendocino*; the 24th they ſaw another Piece of a Tree; *December* 3d they ſaw other Signs of Land, and then firſt ſaw a Weed called Barras; the 9th in Lat. 37°. 38'. the ſaw ſome Snakes, and had but little Wind from that to the 12th, ſo made but ſmall Way; they were then in Lat, 37°. and ſaw more Weeds; the 14th in Lat. 36°. they ſaw the Iſle of *St. Catharine*, 12 Leagues from the Coaſt, beyond the Bay of *Toque*; this was inhabited by ſavage *Indians*; there they ſaw five Iſlands; the 20th they ſaw the Iſle *Ceniſas*, in about Lat 30°. ten Leagues from the Coaſt, which was about eleven Leagues long, and ſix broad, being naked of Trees and uninhabited. The Iſland *Guadaloupe* is in Lat. 29°. 9'. the Iſland *Curras*, ſeventeen Leagues from the Coaſt, is thirty ſix Leagues in Compaſs; the 26th they got to Cape *St. Lucas*, the Southern Cape of *California* in Lat. 22°. 25'. Port *Montery* is in Lat. 37°. it is a good Harbour and Water enough, and well timber'd, Plenty of Game on the Mountains, Bears, Deer, *&c.* and Ducks in the Lakes; ſix Leagues N. W. of it is a rapid River, ſeven Fathom deep, and another large River in Lat. 41°. which has ſo ſtrong a Current that it is difficult to ſail in againſt it. The Port *de los Reys* is a good one, and alſo that of *Don Gaſper* in Lat. 38°. Cape *Mendocino* is in Lat. 41°. 20'. and Cape *Blanco* in

in Lat. 43°. The Gulf of *California* is feven Leagues wide in Lat 29°. So far *Gemelli* gives his Obfervations upon that Voyage.

Caftro fent out *Alvarez de Mandana*, with *Pedro Sarmiento*, Lieutenant, and *Pedro de Orciga*, Vice-Admiral, from *Lima*, in 1568. At 800 Leagues Diftance Weft, in 11°. S. Lat. they found feveral Iflands inhabited by People of a yellowifh Complexion, naked, armed with Bows and Arrows, and Darts; they faw there Hogs, little Dogs, and Fowl, and alfo Cloves, Ginger, and Cinnamon, the laft not of the beft Kind, and they had fome Shew of Gold. The firft Ifland they called *St. Ifabella*; here they built a Pinnace, with which and their Boat, between 9 and 15°. S. Lat. they found out 11 great Iflands, one with another 80 Leagues round; the greateft they called *Guadalcanal*; they failed 150 Leagues along it before they knew that it was an Ifland, to 18°. S. Lat. and then did not fee the End of it; there they got Gold, of which they carried away to the Value of 40000 Pezo's. The Natives had great Canoes, which carried 100 Men. They were four Months among thefe Iflands, and finding the Trade-wind always prevail, they failed North of the Line to make *New-Spain*, and after being in many Storms, having loft all their Mafts, after 9 Months got fafe to Land, but moft of them died for want of Food. The other Ship fared better, and got fafe with moft of their Men to *New Spain*; thefe they called *Solomon*'s *Ifles*.

Sir *Francis Drake* going foon after into thofe Seas, they ftifled the Difcovery, to prevent others from trading with them. This Account was taken from *Lopezvaz*, a *Portuguefe*, by Captain *Withrington*, in the River of *Plate*.

Mandana failed upon a further Difcovery in 1595, and in 10°. S. Lat. 1000 Leagues from *Peru*, 650 from *New-Spain*, and 1000 from *New-Guinea*, came to an Ifland he called *Magdalene*, 10 Leagues round, and near it three other Iflands, St. *Peter*'s, *Dominica*, 15 Leagues in Circuit, and St. *Chriftina*, 9 Leagues; he called them *Las Marquifas*. The Natives were of a dark Colour. He found a fine Harbour in the Weft Side of St. *Chriftina*, in Lat. 9°. 30′. He left it the 5th of *Auguft*. The 15th, after failing 400 Leagues, he difcovered four little low Iflands, in 10°. 40′. S. Lat. 1535 Leagues from *Peru*, called *Solitary Ifles*. The 7th of *September* he difcovered a burning Ifland, well inhabited, where he

he enter'd a Harbour, and removed to a better on the 21ſt; here he ſtaid ſome Time, and reſolved to ſettle.

There being but a Part of the Account of this Voyage preſerved it breaks off here abruptly, and then ſays, after he left this Iſland he croſſed the Line, and found an Iſland in 6°. N. Lat. 30 Leagues in Circuit. *Monday*, the firſt of *January*, he was in 14°. N. Lat. and on the 3d got to *Guam*.

Simon Hernandez, a *Liſbon* Pilot, told *Hackluit* in 1604, that he being in *Lima* in 1600, four Ships went from thence in *February* that Year, deſigned for the *Philippines*; the General was a *Meſtizo*; they were drove by a Storm South of the Line, and fell in with ſeveral rich Countries and Iſlands near the Iſles of *Solomon*. One Place they called *Monte de Plata*, from the Abundance of Silver likely to be found there; for they ſaid they found two Crowns worth in two Handfuls of Duſt, and they gave them an equal Quantity of Silver for Iron. It was two Months ſailing from *Peru*; they returned from thence to *Peru* in *Auguſt*. A Captain of Quality was then ſuing for Leave to ſettle there.

Ferdinando Giros, or *De Quir*, under *De Torres*, was ſent from *Peru* on a Diſcovery in the *South-Sea*, and made ſome that were very conſiderable; but the *Engliſh* at that time ſending ſeveral Ships through the *Magellanick* Streights into thoſe Seas, the Accounts which were publiſhed were taken up by Order of the King of *Spain*, and nothing was divulged but the Copies of two Memorials given to the King in 1610, which *Purchas* got by Accident, and has publiſhed in his Collections, one in *Engliſh*, and the other in *Spaniſh*, from the Original, an Abſtract of which I ſhall give here.

In his eighth Petition he ſets forth, that in thoſe great Iſlands and Countries he diſcovered, the Inhabitants were civilized, and dwelt in wooden Houſes; they made uſe of earthen Veſſels and wooden Spoons; they had Flutes and Drums for Muſick; their Gardens were regularly divided, and fenced with Poles. They uſed Mother of Pearl Shells for different Purpoſes, as well for Uſe as for Ornament; they were clothed, and had Boots; they made Capons and Hogs, their Bread was made of Roots. The had ſix Kinds of Plane-trees, four Kinds of Almonds, a Fruit they called Obi, like to Melacotoons; they had Nuts, Oranges, Lemons, Sugar-canes, Palm-trees, and Cocoas, as alſo Pears, Melons and Beans. They had

had Variety of Fowls and Goats, and the Natives ſaid they had Cows and Oxen, with great Variety of Fiſh. He ſaw in thoſe Countries Silver and Pearl; one of their Captains ſaw Gold; he ſaw Nutmegs, Mace, Ginger, Pepper, and Cinnamon, and Materials for Silk, and alſo Ebony.

The Country was hilly, full of Brooks and Rivers; the Bay of St. *Philip* and *James* was 20 Leagues in Extent, without any Bar, where they had fine Anchorage. The Harbour of *Vera Cruz* could contain a thouſand Ships; it was at the Mouth of two large deep Rivers of eaſy Entrance, where were Woods of fine Timber, full of all Sorts of ſinging Birds; the Haven and Bay were in the Neighbourhood of many fine Iſlands, ſeven of which were 200 Leagues in Extent; one of theſe, within 12 Leagues of the Harbour, was 50 Leagues in Circuit. They were in 15°. 40′. S. Lat. the Air fine and healthy, and the Serenas not dangerous; they took Poſſeſſion of it, and kept their *Whitſuntide* there.

In another Memorial to the King of *Spain*, which is preſerved in the original *Spaniſh*, he ſays, that in the South is concealed the fourth Part of the Globe, that they diſcovered many Iſlands, and mentions 20 of the Names of them. Joined to them are three Countries called *Auſtralia de Spiritu Sancto*, in which is the Bay of St. *Philip* and *James*, and Harbour of *Vera Cruz* abovementioned, where they ſtaid with three Ships 36 Days. He believed they were all one Country, from their high and double Mountains, and by the Greatneſs of the River *Jordan*, which appeared from an Information lodged in *Mexico*, to which he refers.

He ſays further, that in the Iſle *Taumaco*, which is 1250 Leagues from *Mexico*, they ſtaid ten Days, and a Lord of that Iſland, who was called *Tamay*, a Man of Senſe, Tall, and full bodied, his Colour was of Sea-ware, or reddiſh, grey-eyed, with a high Noſe, his Beard and Hair curled, of a grave Aſpect; he was of great Service to them with his People, in helping them to Water. He came on board, and converſed with Signs. He enquired of him if there were other Iſlands around them, and if inhabited; he named above ſixty of them, and a great Country called *Manicola*; they lay from S. S. E. to N. E. To deſcribe the large Iſlands he made large Circles, and ſmaller for the leſſer Iſlands; and for the great Country he opened his Arms, and, pointing to the Sun, ſhutting his Eyes, and laying his Head upon his Hand ſo often, made out that it

would be ten Weeks in failing around them, in which were People of all Colours, fome Friends, fome Enemies, and Canibals, which he fignified by biting his Arm. The next Day he faw many of his People in the Bay, who agreed in the fame Account, and faid they had Cows and Buffaloes, Fowl and Swine, which they fignified by crowing and grunting, *&c.* to make them fenfible of what they would exprefs to them; and upon fhewing them a Pearl, they faid they had of them, and in every Thing told the Truth, and might be depended upon.

When they failed from *Taumaco* they took four of the Natives with them, three were drowned in fwimming, and the other they called *Pedro* came to *Mexico*, and after learning *Spanifh*, upon afking him Queftions, in different Companies, at different Times, he never varied once in his Account, or ever contradicted himfelf. He was a Native of an Ifland called *Chicayana*, greater than *Taumaco*, and four Days Sailing from it; he faid it was leveller, and abounded more with Fruit; the Natives were moft of his *Indian* Colour, with lank Hair; yet fome were white, with red Hair; fome Mullattoes, with half curled Hair, and fome were woolly headed. In his Ifland were many Kinds of Oyfters, with Pearl of feveral Sizes in fhallow Water.

He faid further, that three Days Sailing from *Taumaco* is another Ifland called *Guatopo*; greater than the other two, peopled with fome as white as the common *Spaniards*, with red and black Hair. He faid, that from another Ifland called *Tucopia*, at the Diftance of 5 Days Sailing, is a great Country called *Manicola*, inhabited by many who were fair as well as Mullattoes; it was a high Country, full of Rivers, which could not be paffed but in Canoes; he talked much of the Greatnefs, Fertility, and other Advantages of that Ifland; that he and other *Indians* went there in a great Canoe or Periagua, and he faw there a good Harbour of a ftraiter Entrance than that of *Philip* and *James*; that it was betwixt four Rivers, and that they might coaft along that Country more Days than in going from *Acapulco* to *Mexico* without feeing the End of it; there he fays are many Pearl Oyfters.

In three Days Sailing with a ftiff Gale from *Taumaco* is another Ifland called *Fanofano*; it is low and plain, in which were great Rivers, the Country very fertile and populous, and the Natives, fome

ſome fair, and ſome Mullattoes. Near this are the Iſlands *Pilar* and *Nupon*; in all theſe are Pearl Oyſters.

He ſaid that in *Taumaco* was a grave *Indian* Pilot, who had been in many more Iſlands, and in one great Iſland called *Pouro*, where the People were warlike; he brought with him from thence ſome Fiſh-Gigs and Arrows, which had coloured Points; upon ſhewing him a Piece of Plate, he ſaid the Points were of that Colour. *Giros* ſays, that in the Bay of *Philip* and *James* were many black Stones, very heavy, ſome of which he took to *Mexico*, in which, upon their being eſſayed, they found Silver. Upon ſhewing *Pedro* ſome of theſe, he ſaid, that in *Taumaco* there was much of that Sort, which they called *Teraque*, and alſo in *Manicola*. When he came to be well underſtood in *Spaniſh*, he talked much of the populouſneſs of their ſeveral Iſlands, and of the Variety of Colours in them, and of other great Countries South-eaſt and Weſt of them.

Giros ſays further, that in *the Iſles of Solomon*, diſcovered by *Alvares de Mandaſia* in his firſt Voyage, and in *Santa Cruz* in his ſecond Voyage, many Pearls being found, and he himſelf ſeeing Mother of Pearl Shells in three of theſe Iſlands, added to theſe *Pedro* mentions, there are 15 Iſlands in which there are Pearls at no great Depth, and there muſt be large Pearls ſince there are large Shells to contain them. So much of *Giros*'s Diſcoveries are preſerved in theſe two Memorials.

Gallego, ſailing from *New-Guinea* towards *Magellan*'s Streights, was by Weſtern Winds caſt upon a Southern Country.

The next authentick Journal publiſhed of Diſcoveries made in the *South-Seas*, is that of *Abel Taſman*, a *Dutchman*, fitted out from *Batavia* the 14th of *Auguſt*, 1642. On the 5th of *September* he got into *Maurice Iſland*, in 20°. S. Lat. The 24th of *October*, in Lat. 42°. 25′. and Long. 163°. 50′. he ſaw *Van Dieman*'s Land, and ſailed S. by E. along the Coaſt, to Lat. 44°. where the Land fell away Eaſt, and then N. E. They anchored in a Bay in Lat. 43°. 10′. on the firſt of *December*, and called it *Frederick Henrick*'s *Bay*; here they heard the Voices of Men, but ſaw none, and heard Muſick like the *Jew*'s Harp; they ſaw the Traces of Beaſts and fine Trees, but little or no Under-wood, all Marks of a cultivated Country, and that the People were under Government, and in ſome ſort civilized. They ſailed thence the 5th of *December*, deſigned for

the Isles of Solomon, in Long. 195°. The 9th, in Lat. 42°. 37′. and Long. 176°. they had hollow Waves out of the South. The 13th, in Lat. 42°. 10′. and Long. 188°. 28′. they discovered a Country they called *New-Zeland*; they sailed North-eastward along it to Lat. 40°. 50′. where they anchored the 18th; the Inhabitants were strong, had a rough Voice, and blew upon an Instrument sounding like a Moorish-trumpet; their Colour was a brownish yellow, their Hair black, and thick, tied upon the Tops of their Heads; they had Mats, and Cotton Cloaths; their upper Parts were naked, the Land appeared to be very good. Upon sending their Shallop ashore, some of their Men were killed by the Natives, so they called the Place *Murderers Bay*. They endeavoured to sail East from that Bay, but had Land all around them, the Flood came from the South-east. The 26th they went away North, somewhat Westerly, to clear the Coast. *January* the 4th, in Lat. 34°. 35′. they got to the N. W. Cape, and had hollow Waves from N. E. here they saw the Isle they called *of three Kings*, and in it 35 tall, great Men, who had Sticks and Clubs. The 19th, in Lat. 22°. 35′. and Long. 204°. they saw an Island, two or three Miles round, they called *Peelstreet Island*, from the Number of these Fowls seen in it. The 20th they saw two Islands, in Lat. 21°. 10′. and Long. 205°. 29′. one they called *Amsterdam Island*, and the other *Middleburgh*; on the first they got Hogs, Fowl and Fruit, and met with peaceable and friendly Inhabitants; the Ebb there ran N. E. and Flood S. W. a South-west Moon made high Water, and it flowed 8 Foot. The 25th, in Lat. 20°. 15′. and Long. 206°. 19′. after seeing several small Islands, they came to an Isle they called *Rotterdam Isle*, where they also found peaceable Inhabitants; the Gardens were all laid out, divided and planted with Fruit-trees, and all other Lands improved.

In sailing from thence they saw many more Islands; the 16th of *February* they were in Lat. 17°. 29′. among eighteen or twenty Islands, Shoals and Rocks; they called them *Prince William's Isles*, and *Heemskirk*'s Shoals. From the 8th of *February* in Lat. 15°. 29′. to *March* 2d, in Lat. 9°. 11′. and Long. 192°. 46′. they had rainy thick Weather, and variable Winds, undoubted Signs of being near Land; they had variable Winds and Weather until the 22d, when they had again fine Weather; and being then in South Lat. 5°. 2′. Long. 178°. 32′. they saw many Islands called

Onthong Java, ninety Miles from *New Guinea*; *May* 12th, after ſeeing and ſtopping at many Iſlands, along and near the Coaſt of *New Guinea*, they arrived at the Cape of *Good Hope*, in South Lat. 0°. 26.′ and Long. 147°. 55′. and from thence they returned to *Batavia*, *June* 15th, in Lat. 6°. 12′. and Long. 127°. 18′. after a ten Months Voyage.

There are ſeveral other Iſlands laid down in the Sea Charts, publiſhed as well by the *French* as *Engliſh*, both to the Northward and Southward of the Line, which are ſaid to be taken from the Diſcoveries made by the *Spaniards* traverſing thoſe Seas, when drove by Storms upon them; but as they never publiſhed their Voyages or Journals, I cannot tell whether they are ſufficiently vouched, and therefore won't mention them, nor thoſe Iſlands Northweſt of *California*, mentioned by *Cox* in his *Carolana*, which he ſays he took from a Manuſcript Journal of a Privateer in thoſe Seas, not having ſeen that Journal, and therefore doubt the Truth of it, he making theſe Iſlands to be civilized, and abounding in Gold. I ſhall only mention one Diſcovery more, made by Captain *Davis* in his Return from the *South Sea*, in Lat. 27°. 30′. as he was ſtretching Southward to get into the variable Winds Way, who ſaw Land in South Lat. 27°. about 500 Leagues from *Copiapo* in *Chili*, there was a ſmall ſandy Iſland juſt by him, and to the Weſtward and Northweſtward he ſaw a large Tract of Land as far as he could ſee; but being ſtraitned in Time, and having no ſpare Proviſions to double Cape *Horn*, and make ſo long a Voyage, he did not ſtop to obſerve the Country.

Since that Time no Attempts have been made that are publiſhed, or have come to my Hands, except that lately publiſhed in *Holland*, made by three *Dutch* Ships in 1721, fitted out by their *Weſt India* Company, to find out that Southern Country in the *South Sea*; an Abſtract of ſo much as is material I ſhall here give, altho' the Longitudes they mention can't be depended upon, being either incorrectly printed, or wrong laid down on Purpoſe by the Author, or Publiſher, ſince they don't correſpond with each other, nor with any other Longitude taken from any other uſual firſt Meridian.

Theſe Ships ſailed from *Holland* the 21ſt of *Auguſt* 1721 N. S. and after ſtopping at the *Canaries*, and at *St. Sebaſtian* in *Brazil*, they ſail'd by *Le Maire*'s Streight round Cape *Horn*, and arrived

at

at *Mocha* Iſle in *Chili* the 10th of *March* following; they made no Stay there, but ſail'd to *Ferdinando*'s Iſland in South Lat. 34°. and after refreſhing there, ſailed from thence the latter End of *March* N. W. and got into South Lat. 28°. and Long. 251°. as the Author has made it; but from what firſt Meridian he takes his Account I can't find out; there they expected to ſee the Land *Davis* ſaw, but did not, tho' ſome of the Crew apprehended they ſaw ſome Land; (what he ſaw was in Lat. 27°.) but they had Symptoms of being near Land, for they ſaw great Numbers of Fowl, and among them many Teal; and had variable Winds, which are all Signs of Land in that Latitude. They ſailed in that Parallel 12 Degrees Weſt, and were in all that Courſe attended by many Land as well as Sea-fowl, until the 6th of *April*, being *Eaſter-Day*, when they ſaw an Iſland they called *Eaſter Iſle*; which was ſixteen Leagues in Circuit, in South Lat. 28°. 30'. it was full of Inhabitants of a brown Colour, tho' ſome among them were black, white, and red. The Lands were all well cultivated, regularly divided and bounded, and laid out in Plots; they had Abundance of Fowl and Fruit, particularly Cocoas, and *Indian* Figs. The Inhabitants were peaceable, and had no hoſtile Weapons; they came on board them in Canoes, and invited them aſhore; they obſerved they had Idols ſet up along the Coaſt, before whom they proſtrated themſelves next Morning; when they landed, they crowded about them, and being afraid of their Numbers, they were obliged to fire among them to make them to keep their Diſtance, by which one who had invited them to go aſhore happened to be killed. They intended to have gone next Day aſhore, and made ſome farther Diſcovery of the inward Part of the Iſland; but being in a Place open to the Sea, and having no good Anchorage, they were forced by high Winds to weigh Anchor, and were drove by the Wind and Current to Leeward of the Iſland, and tho' they beat ſome time to Windward, they could not regain the Iſland.

Leaving that Iſland they quitted the Parallel, and in a little Time got into Lat. 15°. which they called the *bad Sea of Schouten*, in which Parallel he ſailed many Days without ſeeing Land, yet they apprehended they were in the right Tract to find the Southern Land; but they ſailed 300 Leagues, and ſo on to 800 Leagues, without Sight of Land; about the Middle of *May* they ſaw an Iſland

Iſland in Lat. 15°. 45′. and Long. 280°. which they thought might be *Schouten*'s *Iſle of Dogs*, but his being in Lat. 15°. 12′. they called it *Carleſhoff*; the Wind changed to S. W. and drove them next Night to four Iſlands 12 Leagues Weſt of *Carleſhoff*, which they called *Pernicious Iſle*, *two Brothers*, and *Siſter*; they were low Iſlands, full of Trees, Cocoas, &c. where were many Oyſters, Muſcles, and Mother of Pearl Shells. Falling in with theſe Iſles in the Night, they loſt their ſmalleſt Ship, which kept a-head; they were five Days getting clear of theſe Iſlands, and ſaving their Men; four or five of them who had mutinied, got on Shore there and quit them; nor would they again come on board, tho' they promiſed to pardon them.

Theſe Iſlands were fully inhabited; the Natives were a large ſtrong People; the Morning after they left theſe Iſlands, eight Leagues farther Weſt, they diſcovered an Iſland four Leagues in Circumference, full of Trees, which they called *Aurora* or *Morning Iſle*, and in the Evening ſaw another Iſland about 12 Leagues in Circuit, which was flat, and look'd very green with Trees, which they called *Veſpers*, or *Evening Iſle*; going Weſtward ſtill, between Lat. 15°. and 16°. they at once diſcovered another Country, on all Sides full of Smokes, and well inhabited; and were engaged in a Number of Iſlands; here were ſix very pleaſant, about 30 Leagues in Extent; they are 25 Leagues from *Pernicious Iſle*; they called them the *Labyrinth*, being incloſed and engaged ſo among them, that with their winding and turning they could ſcarce get through them; as they found no good Anchorage, and no Inhabitants came off to them, they ſailed on Weſt, and in ſome Days ſaw an Iſland which appeared high and fine; they found no Anchorage, but ſent their Sloop on Shore with twenty five Men; Crowds met them armed with Lances upon the Shore, ſo that they were obliged to fire upon them, and then landed to gather Herbs for their ſick Men, and gave ſome Trifles to the Natives who aſſiſted in gathering them; but attempting to do the ſame next Day, and going farther into the Iſland to view it, the Natives, with a Chief at their Head, decoy'd them on, and then in great Numbers fell upon them with Stones, wounded many of them, who being ill of the Scurvy afterwards died on board, and drove them to their Boats; they called this the *Iſle of Refreſhment*, becauſe of the Benefits they found from the wholeſome

Herbs they found there; it is in Lat. 16°. and Long. 285°. about 12 Leagues in Circuit; it was very fertile, with many fine Trees; the Natives were well featur'd, had long black Hair, oil'd and ſhining; they were very active, the Men half clad with a Kind of Net, and the Women all cloathed with a Stuff as ſoft as Silk, with Ornaments of Mother of Pearl.

They quitted that Parallel of Latitude, and ſailed N. W. giving up the Diſcovery to get to *New Britain* and the *Eaſt Indies*, as ſoon as they could, that they might not loſe the eaſterly Monſoon, and in three Days were in Lat. 12°. and Long. 290°. they ſaw there many Iſlands at once, which appeared fine and agreeable, with green Trees; the Inhabitants met them with Fiſh, and many excellent Fruits, Cocoas, *Indian* Figs, *&c.* many Thouſands came to the Shore, with Bows and Arrows; a Man of Diſtinction came on board, with a fair young Woman in a Boat, ſurrounded with many more; all the Inhabitants were white, but burnt with the Sun; they were peaceable and humane, were well cloathed, and not painted, like the others they had ſeen; they wore Silk Garments, and had a kind of Hats upon their Heads, and Bracelets of fine Flowers about their Necks and Arms. The Iſlands were hilly, and were from 10 to 20 Miles in Circuit. They called theſe *Bowman's Iſles*; the Lands were cultivated and divided, and the People the moſt civilized, and the honeſteſt they had ſeen in the *South-Sea*. There they were received like Angels, they had good Anchorage, and were all well refreſhed, and might have had all their ſick Men cured, but the Commanders being afraid of loſing the Monſoon, tho' they were miſtaken by two Months; yet their Haſte made them neglect to ſearch and know theſe Iſlands more accurately, and many more they paſſed by in their Paſſage from thence. They ſailed on N. W. and next Day ſaw two Iſlands, which they took to be *Cocos* and *Traylors Iſles*, diſcovered by *Schouten*. *Cocos* was high, and about 8 Leagues in Circuit; the other was low and bare, in about 11°. S. Lat. Soon after they ſaw two very large Iſlands, they call'd one *Teerhoven*, and the other *Groninghen*; the laſt was ſo large, they imagined it might have been Part of the Continent; they look'd fine, and they coaſted them a Day without ſeeing the End of them, ſo that they apprehended it to be a Part of *Terra Auſtralis*. They ſaw other neighbouring Iſles 150 Miles in Circuit; ſome were for landing,

but

but the Hafte they were in to gain the Monfoon, prevented them from landing, and they thought they would have been foon at *New Britain*, but they were miftaken, for they had many Days failing before they arrived at it; at laft they faw *New Britain* in S. Lat. 5°. it was full of Inhabitants, and look'd fine, it was mountainy, the Natives were of a yellow Colour; after a Storm they failed N. W. and faw fo many Iflands they could not name nor number them; at laft, in S. Lat. 2°. they came to *Moa* and *Arimoa*, fo called by *Schouten*; they failed from thence among numberlefs Iflands, they called them 1000 Ifles, the Natives were black, and were very bad People; they failed along *New Guinea* 400 Leagues, which was very high Land, but fertile; at laft, through innumerable Iflands they arrived at *Boere* in South Lat. 2°. a *Dutch* Ifland, about 40 or 50 Leagues in Circumference, in *September* 1722.

Thefe being all the Journals or Extracts I have met with that I can depend upon, relating to the Difcoveries made in the Southern and Weftern Ocean of *America*; I fhall from thefe, endeavour to fhew in one View, what Regions or Iflands have already been difcovered by *Europeans*, and what Space in thofe Seas remain ftill undifcovered in that immenfe Tract, which comprehends at leaft one third Part of the Globe; in which we have Reafon to believe, that many noble, rich, and populous Countries and Iflands, are yet undifcovered to us in *Europe*, which might afford an extenfive Trade to *Britain*, and open a new Market for our Manufactures, and vaftly enlarge our Commerce and carrying Trade, and we might affift in civilizing numberlefs Nations, and afford them many Neceffaries and Conveniencies, as well for Food as Cloathing, which they are now entirely unacquainted with, and at the fame time improve *Britain* both in Wealth and in the Knowledge of Nations we are at prefent entirely Strangers to.

In making thefe Obfervations I fhall begin with the more Northerly Latitudes, and proceed Southerly to the Southern Polar Circle.

From thefe Journals or Extracts, I don't find that any Countries have been difcovered by *Europeans*, except thofe feen by *Gama* in about N. Lat. 45°. to the Eaftward of *Japan*, in all that great Tract betwixt *Japan* and *California*, from the Lat. of 38°. to the Polar Circle, unlefs thofe Iflands mentioned by *Cox* in his *Carolana*, N. W. from Cape *Blanco* in *California*, be a real Difcovery,

in cafe the Manufcript Journal from which he took it was genuine ; the *Spaniards* never exceeding that Latitude in failing from *Manila* to *Acapulco*, unlefs Storms fhould force them out of their Courfe ; and yet there is the greateft Prefumption to believe, in fo great a Tract, at leaft 1000 Leagues from the Lands of *Jedfo* to *America*, and from Lat. 38°. to 65°. 540 Leagues, that there are great and populous Countries and Iflands not yet difcovered ; as alfo all the N. W. of *America* from Cape *Blanco* in Lat. 43°. to the Polar Circle ; and it feems to be confirmed from the Accounts given by *De Gualle* and *Gemelli* in their Journals, the firft coming within 200 Leagues of *California* had no hollow Sea, and faw many Fifh which are generally feen near Iflands or Sea Coafts ; and alfo from the Ducks, fmall Birds and Doves feen by *Gemelli*, as well as the Weeds, Trees and Fifh, he faw fome hundred Leagues from *California*, which were all Symptoms of their having been near Land.

From Lat. 35°. to 38°. I apprehend there are no Iflands, from 200 Leagues Eaft of *Japan* to *California* ; for that being the general Courfe from *Manila* to *America*, the *Spanifh* Ships, had there been any, had difcovered them in their Paffage.

From Lat. 29°. to 35°. I apprehend there may be feveral Iflands. *De Gualle* faw many Iflands Eaftward of *Japan*, in Lat. 32°. and 33°. and failing farther Eaft, he faw many populous and rich Iflands, fome with Volcanos, which abounded with Gold, Cotton, and Fifh ; *Gemelli* mentions Rocks feen in Lat. 30°. and an Ifland faid to be rich in Gold, and alfo another in Lat. 32°. called *Rica de Plata* ; which, from their Names, and abounding in Gold, may be fuppofed to be well inhabited ; he fpeaks alfo of another more eafterly, called *Donna Maria Laxara*, in Lat. 31°.

Since few or no Ships have traverfed that Ocean from *Mexico* and *California*, to the *Philippines* and *China*, betwixt the Latitude of *Guam* in 13°. 20′. and 35°. a Tract of above 400 Leagues in Extent from North to South, except fome few who have been forced out of their Way by Storms ; as the *St. Jofeph*, upon an Ifland they called *St. Sebaftian* in Lat. 18°. 20′. and the Fleet fent by *Mendofa* from *Natividad*, which difcovered *St. Thomas*, and *Nubleda* or the *Cloudy Ifland*, in Lat. 17°. and *Roca Partida*, I may reafonably fuppofe, in fo large a Tract, that there are many more Iflands to be difcovered, probably in thofe Latitudes, very rich

rich, and as well inhabited as the *Marian* Iſlands, and the others diſcovered Eaſt of *Japan*. *Spilbergen* diſcovered ſome Iſlands in Lat. 18°. 19°. and 20°. within 100 Leagues of the *American* Coaſt; and the Duke and Dutcheſs of *Briſtol* had Symptoms of Land from the Fiſh and Fowl they ſaw, and the Rain they had in the ſame Latitude; and Captain *Shelvock* ſaw an Iſland S. W. from Cape *St. Lucas* in *California* in Lat. 22°. but moſt of theſe Ships falling into the Parallel of Lat. 13°. as ſoon as they could, after leaving the *American* Coaſt, can give us no farther Account of what may be found in thoſe Latitudes at any Diſtance from the *American* Coaſt.

For the ſame Reaſon, very little has been diſcovered betwixt the Line and N. Lat. 13°. *Noort* ſailed Weſt from *America* in N. Lat. 5°. but ſoon got into the Lat. of 13°. and therefore could make no Diſcovery, but near the *American* Coaſt. *Lopez* ſailed from *Natividad* in N. Lat. 19°. and ſteered thence S. W. to Lat. 9°. in that Height looking for the Iſlands *de los Reys*, after ſailing 50 Days Weſt, he ſaw an Iſland of Fiſhermen, and many uninhabited Iſlands, and then changed his Courſe to *Guam*.

The Fleet ſent by *Mendoſa*, found the Iſles *de los Reys*, and ſeveral other Iſlands in Lat. 10; and *Saavedra* found *les Jardines* in the ſame Latitude; but all the Remainder of that Tract remains undiſcovered.

From the Line to S. Lat. 9°. nothing as yet has been diſcovered, except an Iſland by *Magellan* in S. Lat. 5°. near the *Ladrone* Iſlands, as he croſſed the Line to get to a Northern Latitude, and no other Ships came within 9 Degrees of the Line, until they were near the Coaſt of *New Britain*, except the Ship commanded by the *Meſtizo* mentioned by *Hackluit*, who found out ſeveral rich Iſlands, one of which he called *Monte de Plata*, near the Iſlands of *Solomon*, ſo that all under and near the Line is yet undiſcovered except the *Gallopagos* Iſlands under the Line, near the *American* Coaſt, which are uninhabited.

That Tract in the Southern Ocean from 9°. to 15°. S. Lat. is filled with great, rich, and populous Iſlands, and large Countries. The Iſles of *Solomon* found by *Mandana*, 800 Leagues from *Peru*, in thoſe Latitudes, in which were 11 great Iſlands, one with another, 80 Leagues in Circuit; *Guadalcanal*, one of them, being above 150 Leagues in Length, in which they found Gold and

X 2 Spice,

Spice, together with thoſe diſcovered by *Giros*, extending to 15 Degrees Weſtward of *Solomon*'s Iſles, twenty of which he gives Names to, ſeven of which extended 200 Leagues, all abounding in Pearl, and exceeding fruitful, one of them near *Santa Cruz* being 50 Leagues in Circumference; to which is joined a large Country called *Auſtralia de Spiritu Santo*, having large and capacious Harbours and Rivers, being exceeding populous and civilized, abounding in Spice, Gold, Silver and Pearls.

Taſman, in the Weſtern Part of that Ocean, and near the *New Guinea* Coaſt, found many Iſlands from Lat. 15°. to 22°. 35'. but the Eaſtern Part of that Parallel has never yet been diſcovered.

From the Lat. of 22°. 35'. to the Lat. of 34°. 35'. nothing has been diſcovered but the Iſland of *Eaſter*, in Lat. 28°. 30'. by the three *Dutch* Veſſels in 1721, at no great Diſtance from *America*; nor is there any Thing diſcovered from that to the Southern Polar Circle, except ſo much of *New Zealand* as *Taſman* ſailed along from Lat. 34°. 35'. to 42°. 10'. a Country very populous and warlike; ſome Accounts mention that *Giros* had coaſted a Country from the Height of the *Magellanick* Streights to Lat. 17°. but that is doubtful, and not ſupported by his own Memorials, or any other authentick Account; ſo that the greateſt Part of that vaſt Tract in the Southern Temperate Zone, is yet undiſcovered, tho' there is the greateſt Preſumption that there are, in ſo great a Tract, very great, rich, and populous Countries and Iſlands, very capable of Trade, and of being civilized and improved.

From the Numbers of People in *New Zealand* diſcovered by *Taſman*, and in the Iſlands diſcovered by *Schouten*, and the three *Dutch* Veſſels, and the large Countries and Iſlands diſcovered by *Giros*; and alſo the Iſles of *Solomon* and thoſe of *de las Marquiſas*; and from the different Colours and Mixtures among them, as black, Copper-colour'd, brown, yellow, and white, it is highly probable that they are a mixed Breed from many different Countries and Iſlands, adjacent to thoſe diſcovered; for ſince the Canoes and Veſſels ſeen with them were ſmall, except ſome large Periaguas mentioned by *Giros*, which held a hundred People, and the double Canoe ſeen by *Schouten*, which held 23 Perſons; it is probable that theſe Iſles and Countries are almoſt contiguous, and that a conſiderable Continent is in the Temperate Zone, South-weſtward of *America*; the Country ſeen by *Taſman* being near 500 Miles

Miles long, confirms this; and the Numbers of warlike People, and their Uſe of Trumpets, ſhews that they were civilized, and belong'd to a populous State, which encouraged them to reſiſt the *Dutch* when they attempted to land, otherwiſe their Fire-arms muſt have ſtruck a Terror into them.

From the variable Winds and Rain in Lat. 28°. and the Number of Land and Sea Fowl which accompanied the three *Dutch* Ships for 2 or 300 Leagues, we may conclude they were near ſome Sea Coaſt until they came to the Iſle of *Eaſter*; and had they continued in that Parallel, they might probably have diſcovered that Southern Country; but by quitting that Latitude, and falling into Lat. 15°. where *Schouten* had before found an open Sea, with only a few Iſlands in it; they failed from that Southern Land, and ſo miſſed the Country they went to diſcover.

The Tract betwixt S. Lat. 9°. and N. Lat. 13°. having never yet to our Knowledge been diſcovered, except the Iſles *de los Reys*, and the Iſland of Fiſhermen, and ſome uninhabited Iſlands near the *Ladrones*, we have the ſame Reaſon to believe that there may be rich and populous Iſlands there, as well as in thoſe Seas which have been attempted, where Diſcoveries have been made; for I find no Account of any Ships ſailing between theſe two Parallels, except the Ships that croſs'd the Line in ſailing towards *Mexico*, after finding out the Iſles of *Solomon*, and theſe Ships endeavouring to ſhape their Courſe to *Mexico* the ſhorteſt Way, muſt croſs this Tract from South to North, ſailing upon a Wind to get out of the Trade Wind, which was againſt them, and had conſequently very little Chance to make any Diſcovery in their Paſſage.

The Reaſon why this great Tract in the richeſt Climate in the Globe is not yet diſcovered, I take to be this; That moſt of our Navigators have ſhunned ſailing near, or under, the Line, from a miſtaken Notion, that the Equator was more liable to Calms, Rains and Tornado's, than other more diſtant Latitudes; becauſe it ſo happens, that upon the *Guinea* and *African* Coaſt the Line is ſo ſituated, as to be in the Eddy between the Land-wind and Trade, which occaſions theſe Calms, Rains and Tornado's; and the *Spaniards* alſo find it ſo upon the *American* Coaſt, in the *South-Sea*, under the Line, for the ſame Reaſon; but it is not ſo under the Line near *the River of Amazons*, where the true Trade blows, nor at

at a proper Diſtance from the Weſtern Coaſt of *Africa*, nor in the *South-Sea* more Weſterly, where the Trade-wind prevails; for there it will blow as freſh as in any Part betwixt the Tropicks, unleſs there ſhould be many Iſlands more Weſterly under the Line, and then they would have the regular Land and Sea-breeze, or if interrupted, as in *India*, by many very large Iſlands, then they would have regular Monſoons, as they have in *India*.

If therefore we ſhould attempt to diſcover theſe Seas near, and under, the Line, I make no doubt but we ſhould diſcover Iſlands equally abounding in Spice and other rich Commodities as any in *India*. I make no doubt but many Iſlands may be found in the Northern Seas, from Lat. 13 to 35°. as populous as thoſe to the Southward, tho' we have no Account of them at preſent from the *Spaniards*, who diſcovered ſome of them, ſince in the *Marian* Iſlands, and thoſe Eaſtward of *Japan*, they are all inhabited, and very populous; nor can there be the leaſt Doubt but thoſe Countries, from Lat. 40°. to the Polar Circle, are as well peopled as thoſe in the ſame Latitudes in *Aſia* and *America*.

If then an eaſy Paſſage ſhould be found by Sea from *Hudſon*'s *Bay* to that vaſt Weſtern Ocean, and a Trade to it be open'd to all the Merchants in *Britain*, it may, from the foregoing Diſcoveries and Obſervations, plainly appear, that a moſt extenſive, as well as beneficial Commerce, would be laid open to *Britain*, preferable to any other Nation in *Europe*; for we are already in Poſſeſſion of all the Trade carried on through the Streights, and in the Bay of *Hudſon*; and alſo all the Trade to be found through the Bay, which has been given up to us by the *French* in the Treaty of *Utrecht*; and therefore we have a legal Right, by that Treaty, to prevent the *French* from having any Benefit by that Paſſage; and we ſhall have a Right againſt the *Dutch*, *Swedes*, and *Danes*, as firſt Diſcoverers, beſides the Advantage of ſettling in the moſt convenient Situations and Harbours on the other Side of the Paſſage, which will be of great Benefit in carrying on our Commerce in thoſe Seas: Beſides, by the unaccountable Behaviour of the *Hudſon*'s *Bay* Company, the Government and Parliament have a juſt and legal Right to lay open that Trade to all the Merchants in *Britain*, as it is at preſent a Monopoly granted only by Charter from King *Charles* the II. without any Act of Parliament for it, as I have already mentioned; beſides, if they had a Right, they have in-

tirely forfeited that Right by Law, in not fulfilling the Intention of the Grant, which was chiefly to encourage them to find out the Paſſage North-weſt to the Weſtern Ocean, which is the Prayer of their Petition, upon which their Charter was founded, and is ſo expreſſed in their Charter: This they have not only neglected to do, but have concealed the Knowledge, or Preſumptions they had of it, as much as poſſible; and have not only chican'd when applied to, but have actually, by Letter from their Governor, refuſed to look for it, when applied to upon that Account, and have alſo diſcouraged the Attempts of others, not only by concealing the Navigation into thoſe Seas, by obliging their Captains, under a Penalty, not to make or publiſh any Charts or Journals of thoſe Seas and Coaſts, or Voyages thither, but alſo by having laid all the Difficulties they durſt upon the King's Ships lately ſent upon the Diſcovery, having claimed and taken from Captain *Middleton* an *Indian* Boy, whom he had brought to *England*, and having learned the *Engliſh* Tongue, would have proved a good Interpreter, and made his Clerk a Governor of one of their Factories to induce him to leave him, and alſo ſent away their Ships a Month earlier than uſual, to lie in the *Orkneys*, leſt he ſhould have got any of the Sailors who had been accuſtomed to, and acquainted with, that Navigation; but even went farther, to tempt the Captain, if he is to be believed, to quit the King's Service, and not to attempt the Diſcovery, and offered him 5000 *l.* either to return into their Service, or look for it in *Davis*'s Streight, or *Baffin*'s Bay, and not look for it in *Hudſon*'s *Bay* at the *Welcome*, alledging it would coſt the Company ſo much to ſupport their Right againſt the Crown, and as he had beeen their Friend, and knew all their Concerns, it would be better to give him that Sum than to give it to the Lawyers. When they found him Proof againſt their Bribery, they then thought to diſtreſs him another Way, by writing to their Governor at *Churchill*, which was the moſt convenient Harbour for the King's Ships to winter in, and was neareſt to the Paſſage, not to receive him into their Port; and afterwards, when the Company were applied to by the Lords of the Admiralty, to allow him to winter there, if it was neceſſary for him, and to give him what Aſſiſtance they could in ſupplying his Wants, which they would thankfully repay the Company in *London*. After deliberating ſome Time upon an Anſwer, they wrote to the Lords of the Admiralty, that they had ſent

ſuch

fuch a Letter as their Lordfhips defired to their Governor at *Churchhill*, and difpatched it by Poft to their Ships at the *Orkneys*. This being no way fatisfactory to Captain *Middleton*, who had been informed of their Letter to their Governor not to admit him, he applied for a Duplicate, to carry it with him, in cafe the other fhould mifcarry, there being no fettled Poft to the *Orkneys*; upon which they gave him a Duplicate fealed up, and upon Application a Copy of it, to know what it contained, which was in thefe Words:

Hudfon's Bay Houfe, *London*, *May* 15, 1741.

Mr. James Ifham, *and Council*, *at* Prince of Wales's Fort, Churchill River,

Gentlemen,

NOtwithftanding our Orders to you, if Captain *Middleton* (who is fent abroad in the Government's Service to difcover a Paffage North-weft) fhould, by inevitable Neceffity, be brought into real Diftrefs, and Danger of his Life, and Lofs of his Ship, in fuch cafe you are then to give him the beft Affiftance and Relief you can. We remain

Your loving Friends,

Bibye Lake, Governor.
William Elderton.
J. Winter.
Atwell Lake.
John Anthony Merle.
John Merry.

Upon fo extraordinary a Difcovery of the Inclinations of the Company to baffle the Attempt of finding out the Paffage, and to difcourage Captain *Middleton* from profecuting the Difcovery, the Lords of the Admiralty thought it neceffary to apply to the Lords of the Regency, that the Secretary of State might, by their Orders, write to the Company, to require that Affiftance which they refufed to the Admiralty, which was fent; and upon that the Company gave a Letter to the Captain in a more humane and friendly Stile; but, in confequence of their Offer, it is plain that he ftified and

and diſguiſed the Diſcovery of the Paſſage. By this it is evident that the Company believe there is a Paſſage, which they want to conceal; for otherwiſe it had been their Intereſt to have had the Attempt made, and if not found, there would have been an End to the proſecuting it any farther; and they might probably have enjoyed their Trade to the Bay, without its being coveted, or enquired into. Upon the Preſumption therefore of this Paſſage, I ſhall mention what beneficial Commerce may be laid open upon this Diſcovery's being made.

The firſt that appears is upon the North-weſt Coaſt of *America*, from the *Welcome*, or *Ne Ultra*, in Lat. 65°. to Cape *Blanco*, in *California*, in Lat. 43°. In this is contained 22°. of Latitude, and at leaſt 30°. in Longitude, beſides the Inlets that may be in thoſe Seas into the North-weſt Coaſt of *America*, a Tract of at leaſt 600 Leagues, which abounds with Furs, Skins and Copper, and probably with other rich Commodities.

By all the Accounts tranſmitted to us from the *Spaniards* upon the firſt Diſcovery of *New Mexico*, and the Countries of *Cibola* and *Quivira*, North-weſtward of it, we have reaſon to believe that there are many populous, civilized, and induſtrious Nations, from the Latitude of 38°. North, to the Latitude of 50°. or more Northerly, on the North-weſt of the Continent of *America*; which Accounts are of late confirmed by *Lahontan*, and by *Cox*, if his Account may be depended upon, in which they ſeverally agree that there are great trading Nations upon large Rivers and Lakes, which diſcharge their Waters into the Weſtern Sea, in which they have great Veſſels for Trade, which is carried on upon that Coaſt. This is now confirmed by the Natives Weſtward of *Churchill*, who having been there, informed them that they ſaw upon the Weſtern Coaſt, almoſt in the ſame Latitude of *Churchill* (Lat. 59°.) many trading Ships, as large as ours, from whom they got Copper Oar, and Copper, which they produced to them at *Churchill*, within theſe few Years. I think therefore a ſhort Abſtract of the *Spaniſh* Account, and alſo of *Lahontan*'s, may be properly inſerted in this Place.

In the Year 1537, ſome Friars travelling Northward from *Mexico*, as Miſſionaries to inſtruct and civilize the Natives, and make Diſcoveries, went as far North as *Cibola*, in about Lat. 37°. and upon their Return gave ſo fine an Account of that Country, and

thoſe through which they paſſed, affirming that there were large Cities, the Houſes 3 or 4 Stories high, built of Lime and Stone, which were very rich, abounding in Turquoiſes and rich Mines; that it encouraged the Viceroy to ſend *Vaſques de Coronado*, with a large Body of Horſemen, and others, to make a further Diſcovery, and to ſubdue them, and make a Settlement; and in 1539 he ſent two Ships, commanded by *Francis de Ulloa*, to diſcover the Gulph and Coaſt of *California*, and the Year following *Ferdinand Alarchon* ſailed the ſame Courſe, to diſcover that Gulph by Sea, whilſt *Coronado* was to travel by Land, and, if poſſible, to correſpond with each other, *Coronado* being ſuppoſed not to travel far from the Sea-coaſt.

Coronado either went a different Rout from the Friars, until he got to *Cibola*, or found the Country he paſſed through quite different from what the Friars had repreſented it; and when he came there, found the Towns neither ſo rich nor populous as the Friars had given out. They had Stone and Lime Houſes 3 or 4 Stories high, and went into the upper Stories by Ladders; but they found very few Turquoiſes or other rich Metals among them. He puſh'd farther Northwards, towards *Quivira*, and Weſtward, where he found the Country better improved, and the People more induſtrious, and better civilized, and ſent *Don Garcias Lopez de Cardenas* as far as the Weſtern Sea; the Country was very temperate, and abounded with Fruit there; they ſaid they ſaw Ships on the Coaſt which had Alcatrazas or Pelicans of Gold and Silver on their Prows, which had Merchandize; they apprehended them to be from *China*, having been above 30 Days in ſailing thither, as they made appear by Signs to the *Spaniards*.

Coronado ſending ſo indifferent an Account of *Cibola*, which the *Spaniards* ſaid was occaſioned from his juſt having married a young Wife, and his being apprehenſive, that if he made a Settlement, the Viceroy would oblige him to ſtay there; and afterwards dying upon the Road as he was returning, the *Spaniards* for many Years did not renew the Attempt. *Alarchon*, at the ſame time, by Sea, in about Lat. 35°. got to the very Head of the Gulph of *California*, where both *Ulloa* and he found a Tide, which flowed from the Southward, which roſe 6 Fathoms, he coming on Ground upon the Falling of the Tide, thought he had loſt his Ship; but it ſoon after floating with the Tide of Flood, he got into a great River,

ver, moored his Ship, and in his Boat went up the River about 85 Leagues, finding numerous Nations of humane and civil People, and at laſt got ſome Account of *Cibola* and *Coronado*, which was ten Days Journey from the Place he was at. He thence returned to his Ships, and from thence to *Acapulco*; he called the River *Buena Guia*. Theſe two Voyages aſcertains *California* to be a Part of the Continent, they having had the Land in view on both Sides until it cloſed in that River.

The *Spaniards* diſcontinued the further Diſcovery of *Cibola* and *Quivira* until the Year 1582, when it was again undertaken by *Antonio de Veſpejo*, from *St. Bartholomew* in *Mexico*, by the *Rio del Nord*, or *North River*, a very large River, which runs from the North through *New Mexico*, and falls into the Gulph of *Mexico*, Weſtward of the *Miſſiſſippi*. He ſet out the 10th of *November*, 1582. In two Days Journey he reached the *Conchas Indians*, who conducted him 24 Leagues North. He then got to the *Paſſaquetes*, who went with him four Days Journey in a Country rich in Silver Mines. A Day's Journey farther he got to *Toboſas*. 12 Leagues farther he got to others called *Jumanos*, a numerous People, in Stone and Lime Houſes. They travelled on 12 Leagues along the *North River*, ſtill Northward, and got to another Nation cloathed in Shamois Skins, and covered with Cotton Mantles; theſe conducted them five Days Journey Weſtward, to a Country full of Silver Mines. They went thence higher up the River to another populous Nation, 15 Days Journey Weſt; they were told there was a great Lake, the Coaſt of which was full of populous Towns, but they went not to it, but proceeded Northward 15 Days, above 80 Leagues, through Woods and Plains, upon the ſame River, until they got to *New Mexico*, ſo named by them. Two Days further they got to 10 Towns upon the ſame River, well inhabited by 10000 People, well cloathed, who lived in high Houſes with Stoves; they had Cotton and Deer Skin Cloaths, with Shoes and Boots, and arable Lands. From thence they went to the Province of *Tigues*, who having ſome time before kill'd two Friars, they fled from them. The Captain and two of his Men went to another Province, near *Cibola*, where there were 40000 People; they then went to the *Quiros*, where there were 14000, in Lat. 37°. 30′. 14 Leagues farther they arrived at *Cunanes*, or *Punanes*, where were 5 Towns, one called *Cia*, which had 8 Market Places; the Houſes

 were

were plaiftered and painted; in this were 20000 Inhabitants, thefe were civilized, and better governed and cloathed; here were rich Metals. 6 Leagues farther they came to another Province of 7 Towns, containing about 30000 Inhabitants, thefe were alfo well governed and civilized. 15 Leagues further Weft they found another Town called *Acoma*, fituated upon a Rock, containing 6000 People, clad as the others in Cottons and Shamois Skins. 24 Leagues farther Weft they came to *Zuni*, called by them *Cibola*, where *Coronado* had been above 40 Years before; there they found three *Indian* Chriftians, who had been there from that Time, who told them, that 60 Days Journey farther was a great Lake, upon the Banks of which were many large populous Towns, rich in Gold. *Coronado* had gone 12 Days Journey towards it, but wanting Water returned, defigning to go again, but died upon his Return, as is mentioned before. The Captain, with nine Men, defigned to go and make this Difcovery, the reft returning. After he had travelled 28 Leagues Weft, he found a great Province, which contained above 50000 People, who fent to him not to enter their Country, but they afterwards received him kindly, and gave him many Prefents. Thofe confirmed the Account he had before of the great Lake, and the Riches of the Towns about it; he left here five of his Men to return to *Zuni*, and rode Poft with four to fee fome rich Mines which they told him of, and travelling with his Guides 45 Leagues Weft, he got to the Place, and took out very rich Oar from the Mine. Here were peaceable *Indians*, and two pretty large Rivers, where were fine Vines, Walnut-trees, and Flax. The Men, by Signs, told them, that beyond thefe Mountains there was a great River, 8 Leagues wide, but could not find out how far it was to it, but faid it run into the *North-Sea*, and that upon its Banks were great Towns, to which their own, when compared to them, were but fmall Hamlets. He returned from thence to *Mexico*.

Ludovicus Tribaldus wrote from *Valadolid* to *Richard Hackluit*, in 1605, that *Don John de Onate* in the Year 1599, went with 5000 People to conquer thofe Countries 500 Leagues from *Mexico*; that he took the Town of *Acoma* in about Lat. 32°. 40′. after that he proceeded Northwards to another great City, whibh he obliged to fubmit; and after that came to another which was greater, which he through Friendfhip induced to fubmit to him; he afterwards

built a City near *Cibola*, which he called *St. John's Town*, and finding rich Mines there, they reſolved to ſettle. In 1602 he undertook a new Diſcovery of the great Northern River, which at length he accompliſhed, and went from thence to the famous Lake called the Lake of *Conibas*, where he pretended he ſaw a City of vaſt Extent, ſeven Leagues long, and two wide, the Houſes ſeparated from each other, and finely built and ornamented, with fine Gardens; he ſaid the numerous Inhabitants had all retired at his Approach, and fortified themſelves in the Market-place or great Square; upon which not daring to attack them, he returned to *St. John's Town*, and lived there happily. This latter Part ſeems to have the Air of a Romance.

Lahontan ſailing up the long River in 1688 and 1689, found the *Gnacſitares* more civilized than the more eaſterly *Indians* near the *Miſſiſſippi*, and the *Moſemleek* Nation at the Foot of the Hills on the Weſt Side, where the Rivers take their Riſe which fall into the Weſtern Sea, were much more civilized than the *Gnacſitares*, they were cloathed and had Beards, and their Hair came down to their Ears, and had as grave an Aſpect as *Spaniards*; theſe laſt told him, at the Diſtance of 150 Leagues from the Place he was in, their River diſcharged itſelf into a great Salt Lake 300 Leagues in Circumference, where it was two Leagues wide; that on the lower Part of the River were ſix large noble Cities, ſurrounded with Stone, cemented with fat Earth; that there were 100 Towns great and ſmall around the Lake; they had upon it large Veſſels 130 Foot long, with which they navigated that Lake, the Inhabitants made Stuffs, Copper Axes, and other Manufactures; the Government was deſpotick; they were called *Tahuglauk*, and ſaid, in their Way of Speech, they were as numerous as the Leaves upon the Trees; they had Leather and make Boots of it; the Lake is 30 Leagues broad, ſtretching to the Southward. The *Tahuglauk* had Beards two Inches long, Coats down to their Knees, had ſharp Caps on their Heads, had Canes with tip'd Heads, and Boots; the Women did not ſhew themſelves; they were at War with ſeveral populous Nations near the Lake, and in its Neighbourhood.

Cox in his *Carolana* ſays the *Yellow River*, or River of the *Maſſorites*, has its Source in the ſame Hills with the long River, on the Weſt Side of which, after a Day's Journey, are Springs, which

form

form a great River, which falls into the great Lake mentioned by *Lahontan*, the *Indians* affirming that there are great Ships failing in that Lake, twenty times larger than their Canoes; that this Lake forms another River below it, which is difcharged into the Weftern Sea.

Cox fays farther, that he had a Journal communicated to him in Manufcript, by which, if genuine, it appeared that one Captain *Coxton*, in King *Charles* the Second's Time, Commander of a Privateer cruizing for the *Manila* Ship, being too foon at *California* by fome Months, failing Northwards, difcovered a great River in N. Lat.   and within it a great Lake; near the Entrance he found a convenient Ifland to refit his Ship in, and ftaid there two or three Months; he happened to have a Man on board who underftood their Language; he was kindly received by them, when they underftood he was an Enemy to the *Spaniards*; he called them the Nation of *Thoya*; they often engage the *Spaniards* and beat them, bringing 30 or 40000 Men into the Field. At the proper Seafon they failed W. by S. and came to five Iflands, about 50 or 60 Miles each in Compafs, one he touch'd at was called *Earinda* or *Carinda*, they fupplied him with Provifions, and 86 Pound Weight of Gold, in Truck for his Commodities, in three or four Days Time; they faid they had no more then, fupplying themfelves only at a certain Seafon, when Ships came to trade with them from the Weft, fuppofed by him from *Japan*. So far *Cox*, if he is to be credited.

On the Right or Starboard Side of the Paffage, it is highly probable that there are many great Countries, in a Tract of above 13 or 1400 Leagues betwixt *Ne ultra* and *Japan*; which is in Lat. 38°. which would afford a vaft Variety in Trade, to return for the Woollen and Iron Manufactures, and other Goods which they would neceffarily take from *Britain*, in thofe temperate or cold Climates.

The Peninfula of *California*, from Cape *Blanco* in Lat. 43°. to Cape *St. Lucas* in Lat. 23°. 30'. a Coaft of above 400 Leagues, and alfo within the Gulph higher than the Latitude of 34°. where it terminates in a great River navigable for fome hundred Miles into the Country of *Cibola* and *Quivina*, populous and civilized Nations; and alfo the Eaft Coaft of the Gulph, of near 300 Leagues Extent, of which no Part is poffefs'd by the *Spaniards*; fo large

large a Coaſt and Country will in ſome time open a conſiderable Trade to us.

The Trade along the *Mexican* and *Guatimala* Coaſt, and *Terra Firma*, as far as *Panama*, nay even as far as *Peru* and *Chili*, would then be within the Circle of our Commerce in Time of Peace; and open to our Depredations in Time of War, which would induce the *Spaniards* to live upon good Terms with us.

On the other Hand, we ſhould be able to open a Trade to *Japan* and *China*, an eaſier and ſhorter Way, as well as the rich Iſlands in the Neighbourhood of *Japan*, which would afford a very extenſive Trade; for the Emperor of *Japan* would find it his Intereſt to trade with us upon equitable Terms; for they being very bad Sailors, our Ships might diſtreſs them, and cut off their Communication from the rich Iſlands they trade to, Eaſtward of them, in caſe they us'd us as Enemies, and refuſed us an equitable Trade; ſince Furs are highly valued in *Japan* and *China*, the Fur Trade in *North America*, and the cold Countries betwixt it and *Japan*, when diſcovered, would afford us a very great Fund for that Trade, beſides what *European* Goods would be wanted there.

The *Philippine* and Spice Iſlands would be within the Circle of our Trade, and we might probably find out other Spice Iſlands, equally beneficial to trade with, as thoſe poſſeſſed by the *Dutch*, ſince there are a vaſt Number of Iſlands Eaſtward of the *Dutch* Spice Iſlands, in the ſame Latitudes; and both *Mandana* and *Giros* in their Diſcoveries of the *Iſles of Solomon*, and the other Iſlands, ſay expreſly, that they ſaw in them Cloves, Nutmegs, Ginger and Cinnamon; and if to theſe Iſlands we add that vaſt Tract yet undiſcovered on each Side of the Line, and beyond theſe from S. Lat. 15°. to the Lat. of 66°. it can't eaſily be conceived how extenſive that Trade may prove; being a Space almoſt equal to all I have already named, extending from *New Guinea* to *Chili*, about 2000 Leagues, and from the Lat. of 60° South, only to 40°. North, 2000 Leagues; which is almoſt a Square of 2000 Leagues; a moſt immenſe Tract, almoſt equal to the Continent of *Europe*, *Aſia*, and *Africa*.

If then a Diſcovery ſhould be made of this Paſſage, to carry on ſo vaſt a Trade to Advantage, a conſiderable Settlement ſhould be immediately made in *California*, or rather upon ſome convenient Iſland near that Coaſt, in caſe one ſhould be found with a

ſafe and capacious Harbour, with Woods and proper Materials for ſupplying and refitting of Ships; the Iſle of *Ceniſas* or *Carras*, or Iſle of Cedars, or any on that Coaſt which may be found proper, theſe being in a fine Latitude, betwixt 28°. and 32°. or the Port of *Montery* in Lat. 37°. That Settlement ſhould be made the Rendezvous for all Ships going from, or returning to *Europe*, where Ships ſhould ſtop for Refreſhments, and to be refitted before they proceed farther, or return to *Europe*; and ſhould be the Head Settlement, as *Batavia* is to the *Dutch* in *India*, and from hence the Trade might Spread to *Aſia*, *India*, *Mexico* and *Peru*; and from this Place the Iſlands in the great *South Sea* might be diſcovered, and a Commerce be begun with them. After this Settlement is made ſecure, another ſhould be formed in a Southern Latitude, about 30°. about 7 or 800 Leagues from the *American* Coaſt, perhaps the Iſle of *Eaſter*, or ſome other Iſland with a good Harbour and fruitful Soil, where the Natives are peaceable and humane, and from thence a further Diſcovery Southerly and Weſterly, and a Trade, may be begun with theſe Regions, as well as with thoſe nearer the Line; ſo that thoſe two Settlements would be as two Centres, the one for the Southern, and the other for the Northern Countries and Iſlands diſperſed through thoſe Seas; when theſe were made, if the only true and laudable Method was followed, of civilizing and aſſiſting the Natives, and putting them upon proper Improvements in their ſeveral Countries and Iſlands, ſuitable to their different Climates, that might be beneficial to themſelves, and proper for Trade; the *Engliſh* might be the Carriers of all thoſe Nations, which would give them an immenſe Profit, and furniſh them with all our Manufactures, and ſuch other *European* Commodities as they ſhould want, without being at any great Expence of People, to ſettle other Countries in thoſe Seas: Here would be Room for Improvements in Trade for Ages to come, and would give full Employment to our Manufacturers, and Merchants in *Britain*, and a perpetual Return of Wealth; and at the ſame Time we ſhould civilize and make happy numberleſs Nations, and bring them, by Degrees, to be capable of knowing divine Truths.

APPENDIX.

CONTAINING

His MAJESTY's

ROYAL CHARTER

TO THE

GOVERNOR *and* COMPANY

OF

HUDSON's BAY:

AND

Other PAPERS relating to the TRADE to that Place.

TOGETHER WITH

A VOCABULARY of the LANGUAGES of ſome of the adjoining *INDIAN* NATIONS.

His MAJESTY's ROYAL CHARTER TO THE GOVERNOR *and* COMPANY OF *HUDSON's BAY.*

CHARLES the II. by the Grace of God, King of *England*, *Scotland*, *France* and *Ireland*, Defender of the Faith, *&c.* to all to whom these Presents shall come, greeting: Whereas Our dear intirely beloved Cousin, Prince *Rupert*, Count Palatine of the *Rhine*, Duke of *Bavaria* and *Cumberland*, &c. *George*, Duke of *Albemarle*, *William*, Earl of *Craven*, *Henry*, Lord *Arlington*, *Anthony*, Lord *Ashley*, Sir *John Robinson*, and Sir *Robert Vyner*, Knights and Baronets, Sir *Peter Colleton*, Baronet, Sir *Edward Hungerford*, Knight of the Bath, Sir *Paul Neele*, Sir *John Griffith*, Sir *Philip Carteret*, and Sir *James Hayes*, Knights, *John Kirke*, *Francis Millington*, *William Prettyman*, *John Fenn*, Esquires, and *John Portman*, Citi-

Charter of *Hudson's Bay*, *May* 2. 1669.

Preamble, Names and Qualities, of the Patentees.

zen

zen and Goldſmith of *London*, have, at their own great Coſt and Charges, undertaken an Expedition for *Hudſon*'s *Bay*, in the North-weſt Parts of *America*, for the Diſcovery of a new Paſſage into the *South-Sea*, and for the finding of ſome Trade for Furs, Minerals, and other conſiderable Commodities, and by ſuch their Undertaking, have already made ſuch Diſcoveries as do encourage them to proceed farther in Purſuance of their ſaid Deſign, by means whereof there may probably ariſe great Advantage to Us and Our Kingdoms.

And whereas the ſaid Undertakers, for their farther Encouragement in the ſaid Deſign, have humbly beſought Us to incorporate them, and grant unto them, and their Succeſſors, the whole Trade and Commerce of all thoſe Seas, Streights and Bays, Rivers, Lakes, Creeks and Sounds, in whatſoever Latitude they ſhall be, that lie within the Entrance of the Streights commonly called *Hudſon*'s *Streights*, together with all the Lands, Countries and Territories, upon the Coaſts and Confines of the Seas, Streights, Bays, Lakes, Rivers, Creeks and Sounds, aforeſaid, which are not now actually poſſeſſed by any of Our Subjects, or by the Subjects of any other Chriſtian Prince or State.

The Grant of Incorporation to the ſaid Patentees.

Now know ye, That We being deſirous to promote all Endeavours that may tend to the publick Good of Our People, and to encourage the ſaid Undertaking, have, of Our eſpecial Grace, certain Knowledge, and mere Motion, given, granted, ratified and confirmed, and by theſe Preſents for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, do give, grant, ratify and confirm, unto Our ſaid Couſin Prince *Rupert*, *George*, Duke of *Albemarle*, *William*, Earl of *Craven*, *Henry*, Lord *Arlington*, *Anthony*, Lord *Aſhley*, Sir *John Robinſon*, Sir *Robert Vyner*, Sir *Peter Colleton*, Sir *Edward Hungerford*, Sir *Paul Neele*, Sir *John Griffith*, Sir *Philip Carteret*, and Sir *James Hayes*, *John Kirke*, *Francis Millington*, *William Prettyman*, *John Fenn*, and *John Portman*, that they, and ſuch others as ſhall be admitted into the ſaid Society as is hereafter expreſſed, ſhall be one Body Corporate and Politique, in Deed and in Name, by the Name of *The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England, trading into Hudſon's Bay*, and them by the Name of *The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England, trading into Hudſon's Bay*, one Body Corporate and Politique, in Deed and in Name, really and fully for ever, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do

Their Title, *The Company of Adventurers of England, trading into Hudſon's Bay.*

make, ordain, conſtitute, eſtabliſh, confirm and declare, by theſe Preſents, and that by the ſame Name of *Governor and Company of Adventurers of England, trading into Hudſon's Bay*, they ſhall have perpetual Succeſſion, and that they and their Succeſſors, by the Name of *Governor and Company of Adventurers of England, trading into Hudſon's Bay*, be, and at all Times hereafter ſhall be, perſonable and capable in Law to have, purchaſe, receive, poſſeſs, enjoy and retain, Lands, Rents, Privileges, Liberties, Juriſdiction, Franchiſes and Hereditaments, of what Kind, Nature or Quality ſoever they be, to them and their Succeſſors; and alſo to give, grant, alien, aſſign and diſpoſe Lands, Tenements and Hereditaments, and to do, execute all and ſingular other Things by the ſame Name that to them ſhall or may appertain to do. And that they, and their Succeſſors, by the Name of *The Governor and Company of Adventurers of England, trading into Hudſon's Bay*, may plead, and be impleaded, anſwer, and be anſwered, defend, and be defended, in whatſoever Courts and Places, before whatſoever Judges and Juſtices, and other Perſons and Officers, in all or ſingular Actions, Pleas, Suits, Quarrels and Demands, whatſoever, of whatſoever Kind, Nature or Sort, in ſuch Manner and Form as any other Our Liege People of this Our Realm of *England*, being Perſons able and capable in Law, may, or can have, purchaſe, receive, poſſeſs, enjoy, retain, give, grant, demiſe, alien, aſſign, diſpoſe, plead, defend, and to be defended, do, permit, and execute. And that the ſaid *Governor and Company of Adventurers of England, trading into Hudſon's Bay*, and their Succeſſors, may have a common Seal to ſerve for all the Cauſes and Buſineſſes of them and their Succeſſors, and that it ſhall and may be lawful to the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, the ſame Seal, from time to time, at their Will and Pleaſure, to break, change, and to make anew, or alter, as to them ſhall ſeem expedient.

Power for the ſaid Company to make a common Seal, and to break or alter it.

And farthermore, We will, and by theſe Preſents for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do ordain, that there ſhall be from henceforth one of the ſame Company to be elected and appointed in ſuch Form as hereafter in theſe Preſents is expreſſed, which ſhall be call'd *The Governor of the ſaid Company.*

A Governor and Committee to be choſen.

And that the ſaid Governor and Company ſhall and may elect ſeven of their Number in ſuch Form as hereafter in theſe Preſents is expreſſed,

expreſſed, which ſhall be called *The Committee of the ſaid Company*, which Committee of ſeven, or any three of them, together with the Governor or Deputy Governor of the ſaid Company for the time being, ſhall have the Direction of the Voyages of and for the ſaid Company, and the Proviſion of the Shipping and Merchandizes thereunto belonging, and alſo the Sale of all Merchandizes, Goods, and other Things returned, in all or any the Voyages or Ships of or for the ſaid Company, and the managing and handling of all other Buſineſs, Affairs and Things, belonging to the ſaid Company. And We will, ordain and grant by theſe Preſents for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, that they the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, ſhall from henceforth for ever be ruled, ordered and governed, according to ſuch Manner and Form as is hereafter in theſe Preſents expreſſed, and not otherwiſe : And that they ſhall have, hold, retain and enjoy, the Grants, Liberties, Privileges, Juriſdictions and Immunities, only hereafter in theſe Preſents granted and expreſſed, and no other. And for the better Execution of Our Will and Grant in this Behalf, We have aſſigned, nominated, conſtituted and appointed, by theſe Preſents for us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, and We do aſſign, nominate, conſtitute and make, our ſaid Couſin, Prince *Rupert*, to be the firſt and preſent Governor of the ſaid Company, and to continue in the ſaid Office from the Date of theſe Preſents until the 10th *November* then next following, if he, the ſaid Prince *Rupert*, ſhall ſo long live, and ſo until a new Governor be choſen by the ſaid Company in Form hereafter expreſſed. And alſo We have aſſigned, nominated and appointed, and by theſe Preſents for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do aſſign, nominate and conſtitute, the ſaid Sir *John Robinſon*, Sir *Robert Vyner*, Sir *Peter Colleton*, Sir *James Hayes*, *John Kirke*, *Francis Millington*, and *John Portman*, to be the ſeven firſt and preſent Committees of the ſaid Company, from the Date of theſe Preſents until the ſaid 10th of *November* then alſo next following, and ſo until new Committees ſhall be choſen in Form hereafter expreſſed.

Prince *Rupert*, the firſt Governor, to continue to the 10th *November*, 1670.

The Names of the firſt Committee, to continue to the ſaid 10th of *November*, 1670.

And farther, We will and grant by theſe Preſents, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, unto the ſaid Governor and their Succeſſors, that it ſhall and may be lawful to and for the ſaid Governor and Company for the Time being, or the greater Part of them preſent

at any publick Aſſembly commonly called, *The Court General to be holden for the ſaid Company*, the Governor of the ſaid Company being always one, from time to time to elect, nominate and appoint one of the ſaid Company to be Deputy to the ſaid Governor; which Deputy ſhall take a corporal Oath, before the Governor and three more of the Committee of the ſaid Company for the Time being, well, truly, and faithfully to execute his ſaid Office of Deputy to the Governor of the ſaid Company, and after his Oath ſo taken, ſhall and may from time to time, in the Abſence of the ſaid Governor, exerciſe and execute the Office of Governor of the ſaid Company, in ſuch Sort as the ſaid Governor ought to do.

Power to elect a Deputy Governor.

And farther, We will and grant by theſe Preſents, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, unto the ſaid Governor and Company of Adventurers of *England* trading into *Hudſon's Bay*, and their Succeſſors, that they, or the greater Part of them, whereof the Governor for the Time being, or his Deputy to be one, from time to time, and at all Times hereafter, ſhall and may have Authority and Power, yearly and every Year, between the firſt and laſt Day of *November*, to aſſemble and meet together in ſome convenient Place, to be appointed from time to time by the Governor, or in his Abſence by the Deputy of the ſaid Governor, and the ſaid Company for the Time being, and the greater Part of them which then ſhall happen to be preſent, whereof the Governor of the ſaid Company, or his Deputy for the Time being to be one, to elect and nominate one of the ſaid Company, which ſhall be Governor of the ſaid Company for one whole Year, then next following, which Perſon being ſo elected and nominated to be Governor of the ſaid Company, as is aforeſaid, before he be admitted to the Execution of ſaid Office, ſhall take a corporal Oath before the laſt Governor, being his Predeceſſor or his Deputy, and any three or more of the Committee of the ſaid Company for the Time being, that he ſhall from time to time, well and truly execute the Office of Governor of the ſaid Company, in all Things concerning the ſame; and that immediately after the ſame Oath ſo taken, he ſhall and may execute and uſe the ſaid Office of Governor of the ſaid Company, for one whole Year from thence next following.

Election of the future Governor to be between the firſt and laſt Days of *November* yearly.

Manner of Election.

And in like Sort, We will and grant, That as well every one of the above named to be of the ſaid Company or Fellowſhip,

as

Each Member of the Company to take an Oath before the Governor or his Deputy.

as all others hereafter to be admitted, or free of the ſaid Company, ſhall take a corporal Oath before the Governor of the ſaid Company, or his Deputy for the Time being, to ſuch Effect as by the ſaid Governor and Company, or the greater Part of them, in any publick Court to be held for the ſaid Company, ſhall be in reaſonable and legal Manner ſet down and deviſed, before they ſhall be allowed or admitted to trade or traffick as a Freeman of the ſaid Company. **And farther,** We will and grant by theſe Preſents, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, That the ſaid Governor, or Deputy Governor, and the reſt of the ſaid Company, and their Succeſſors for the Time being, or the greater Part of them, whereof the Governor or Deputy Governor, from time to time, to be one, ſhall and may from time to time, and at all Times hereafter, have Power and Authority yearly, and every Year, between the firſt and laſt Day of *November*, to aſſemble and meet together in ſome convenient Place, from time to time to be appointed by the ſaid Governor, or in his Abſence by his Deputy; and that they being ſo aſſembled, it ſhall and may be lawful to and for the ſaid Governor and his Deputy, and the Company for the time being, or the greater Part of them, which then ſhall happen to be preſent, whereof the Governor of the ſaid Company, or his Deputy for the Time being to be one, to elect and nominate ſeven of the ſaid Company, which ſhall be a Committee of the ſaid Company, as aforeſaid, before they be admitted to the Execution of their Office, ſhall take a corporal Oath, before the Governor or his Deputy, and any three or more of the ſaid Committee of the ſaid Company, being the laſt Predeceſſors, that they, and every of them, ſhall well and faithfully perform their ſaid Office of Committees in all Things concerning the ſame, and that immediately after the ſaid Oath ſo taken, they ſhall and may execute and uſe their ſaid Office of Committees of the ſaid Company, for one whole Year from thence next following.

Election of a new Committee between the firſt and laſt Days of *November* yearly.

And moreover, Our Will and Pleaſure is, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do grant unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, that when, and as often as it ſhall happen, the Governor or Deputy Governor of the ſaid Company for the Time being, at any Time within one Year after that he ſhall be nominated, elected, and ſworn to the Office of

of the Governor of the ſaid Company, as is aforeſaid, to die or to be removed from ſaid Office, which Governor or Deputy Governor not demeaning himſelf well in his ſaid Office, We will to be removeable at the Pleaſure of the reſt of the ſaid Company, or the greater Part of them which ſhall be preſent at their publick Aſſemblies, commonly called, *Their General Courts holden for the ſaid Company*, that then it ſhall, and ſo often may be, lawful to and for the Reſidue of the ſaid Company for the Time being, or the greater Part of them, within a convenient Time, after the Death or Removing of any ſuch Governor, or Deputy Governor, to aſſemble themſelves in ſuch convenient Place as they ſhall think fit, for the Election of the Governor or Deputy Governor of ſaid Company; and that the ſaid Company or the greater Part of them, being then and there preſent, ſhall and may, then and there, before their Departure from the ſaid Place, elect and nominate one other of the ſaid Company, to be Governor or Deputy Governor for the ſaid Company, in the Place or Stead of him that ſo died or was removed; which Perſon being ſo elected and nominated to the Office of Governor or Deputy Governor of the ſaid Company, ſhall have and exerciſe the ſaid Office, for and during the Reſidue of the ſaid Year, taking firſt a corporal Oath, as is aforeſaid, for the due Execution thereof; and this to be done from time to time, ſo often as the Caſe ſhall ſo require.

Power to remove the Governor or Deputy Governor before their Year be expired.

And elect others in their Room for the Remainder of that Year.

And alſo, Our Will and Pleaſure is, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do grant unto the ſaid Governor and Company, that when, and as often as it ſhall happen, any Perſon or Perſons of the Committee of the ſaid Company for the Time being, at any Time within one Year next after that they or any of them ſhall be nominated, elected and ſworn to the Office of Committee of the ſaid Company as is aforeſaid, to die or to be removed from the ſaid Office, which Committee not demeaning themſelves well in their ſaid Office, We will, to be removeable at the Pleaſure of the ſaid Governor and Company, or the greater Part of them, whereof the Governor of the ſaid Company for the Time being, or his Deputy, to be one; that then, and ſo often, it ſhall and may be lawful to and for the ſaid Governor, and the reſt of the Company for the Time being, or the greater Part of them, whereof the Governor for the Time being, or his Deputy, to be one, within convenient Time after the

Power alſo to remove any Member of the Committee.

the Death or removing of any of the ſaid Committees, to aſſemble themſelves in ſuch convenient Place as is or ſhall be uſual and accuſtomed for the Election of the Governor of the ſaid Company, or where elſe the Governor of the ſaid Company for the Time being, or his Deputy, ſhall appoint. And that the ſaid Governor and Company, or the greater Part of them, whereof the Governor for the Time being, or his Deputy, to be one, being then and there preſent, ſhall, and may, then and there, before their Departure from the ſaid Place, elect and nominate one or more of the ſaid Company, in the Place or Stead of him or them that ſo died, or was or were ſo removed, which Perſon or Perſons ſo nominated and elected to the Office of Committee of the ſaid Company, ſhall have and exerciſe the ſaid Office, for and during the Reſidue of the ſaid Year, taking firſt a corporal Oath as is aforeſaid, for the due Execution thereof, and this to be done from time to time, ſo often as the Caſe ſhall require.

And elect another in his Room, and the like alſo in caſe of Death.

And to the End the ſaid *Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudſon's Bay*, may be encouraged to undertake, and effectually to proſecute the ſaid Deſign, of Our more eſpecial Grace, certain Knowledge, and mere Motion, We have given, granted and confirmed, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, do give, grant, and confirm, unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, the ſole Trade and Commerce of all thoſe Seas, Streights, Bays, Rivers, Lakes, Creeks and Sounds, in whatſoever Latitude they ſhall be, that ly within the Entrance of the Streights commonly called *Hudſon's Streights*, together with *all the Lands* and Territories upon the Countries, Coaſts and Confines of the Seas, Bays, Lakes, Rivers, Creeks and Sounds aforeſaid, that are not already actually poſſeſſed by the Subjects of any other Chriſtian Prince or State, with the Fiſhing of all Sorts of Fiſh, Whales, Sturgeons, and all other Royal Fiſhes, in the Seas, Bays, Inlets, and Rivers within the Premiſſes, and the Fiſh therein taken, together with the Royalty of the Sea upon the Coaſts within the Limits aforeſaid, and all Mines Royal, as well diſcovered as not diſcovered, of Gold, Silver, Gems, and precious Stones, to be found or diſcovered within the Territories, Limits, and Places aforeſaid, and that the Land be from henceforth reckon'd *and reputed as one of our Plantations* or Colonies in *America*, call'd *Rupert's Land.*

The Grant of the Trade.

And Territories to the ſaid Company, with the Royalties of Fiſhing, *&c.*

Mines and Minerals.

The Plantation to be called *Rupert's* Land.

And

And further, We do by these Presents, for Us, Our Heirs and Successors, make, create and constitute, the said Governor and Company for the Time being, and their Successors, the true and absolute Lords and Proprietors of the same Territories, Limits and Places aforesaid, and of all other the Premisses, saving always the Faith, Allegiance and Sovereign Dominion to Us, Our Heirs and Successors, for the same to have, hold, possess and enjoy the said Territories, Limits and Places, and all and singular other the Premisses, hereby granted as aforesaid, with their, and every of their Rights, Members, Jurisdictions, Prerogatives, Royalties and Appurtenances whatsoever, to them the said Governor and Company, and their Successors for ever, to be holden of Us, Our Heirs and Successors, as of Our Mannor of *East Greenwich* in the County of *Kent*, in free and common Soccage, and not in *Capite* or by Knight's Service; yielding and paying yearly to Us, Our Heirs and Successors, for the same, two Elks and two black Beavers, whensoever, and as often as We, Our Heirs and Successors, shall happen to enter into the said Countries, Territories and Regions hereby granted.

The first Company Lords Proprietors of said Land.

To hold the same for ever

And farther, Our Will and Pleasure is, and by these Presents, for Us, Our Heirs and Successors, We do grant unto the said Governor and Company, and to their Successors, that it shall and may be lawful, to and for the said Governor and Company, and their Successors, from time to time, to assemble themselves, for or about any the Matters, Causes, Affairs, or Businesses of the said Trade, in any Place or Places for the same convenient, within our Dominions or elsewhere, and to hold Court for the said Company, and the Affairs thereof; and that also, it shall and may be lawful to and for them, or the greater Part of them, being so assembled, and that shall then and there be present, in any such Place or Places, whereof the Governor or his Deputy for the Time being to be one, to make, ordain, and constitute, such, and so many reasonable Laws, Constitutions, Orders and Ordinances, as to them, or the greater Part of them being then and there present, shall seem necessary and convenient for the good Government of the said Company, and of all Governors of Colonies, Forts and Plantations, Factors, Masters, Mariners, and other Officers employed or to be employed, in any the Territories and Lands aforesaid, and in any of their Voyages; and for the better Advancement and Conti-

Power for assembling the said Company.

Who may make Laws for the Government thereof, and all their Forts, Plantations, Ships, &c.

nuance of ſaid Trade, or Traffick and Plantations, and the ſame Laws, Conſtitutions, Orders and Ordinances ſo made, to be put in Uſe and execute accordingly, and at their Pleaſure to revoke and alter the ſame, or any of them, as the Occaſion ſhall require: And that the ſaid Governor and Company, ſo often as they ſhall make, ordain, or eſtabliſh, any ſuch Laws, Conſtitutions, Orders, and Ordinances, in ſuch Form as aforeſaid, ſhall and may lawfully impoſe, ordain, limit and provide, ſuch Penalties and Puniſhments upon all Offenders, contrary to ſuch Laws, Conſtitutions, Orders and Ordinances, or any of them, as to the ſaid Governor and Company for the Time being, or the greater Part of them, then and there being preſent, the ſaid Governor or his Deputy being always one, ſhall ſeem neceſſary or convenient for the Obſervation of the ſame Laws, Conſtitutions, Orders and Ordinances; and the ſame Fines and Amerciaments ſhall and may by their Cfficers and Servants, from time to time to be appointed for that Purpoſe, levy, take and have, to the Uſe of the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, without the Officers and Miniſters of Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, and without any Account thereof to Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, to be made. All and ſingular which Laws, Conſtitutions, Orders and Ordinances, ſo as aforeſaid to be made, We will to be duly obſerved and kept under the Pains and Penalties therein to be contained; ſo always as the ſaid Laws, Conſtitutions, Orders and Ordinances, Fines and Amerciaments, be reaſonable, and not contrary or repugnant, but as near as may be agreeable to the Laws, Statutes or Cuſtoms, of this Our Realm.

The ſaid Laws being reaſonable, and not repugnant to the Laws of this Realm.

And farthermore, of our ample and abundant Grace, certain Knowledge, and mere Motion, We have granted, and by theſe Preſents for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, do grant unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, that they, and their Succeſſors, and their Factors, Servants and Agents, for them, and on their Behalf, and not otherwiſe, ſhall for ever hereafter have, uſe and enjoy, *not only the whole, intire, and only Liberty of Trade and Traffick*, and the whole, intire, and only Liberty, Uſe and Privilege, of Trading and Traffick to and from the Territories, Limits and Places, aforeſaid; but alſo the whole and intire Trade and Traffick to and from all Havens, Bays, Creeks, Rivers, Lakes and Seas, into which they ſhall find Entrance or Paſſage by Water or Land out of the Territories, Limits and Places, aforeſaid; *and to*

Grant of all other Trade which they ſhall find from the Place aforeſaid.

to and with all the Natives and People, Inhabitants, or which ſhall inhabit within the Territories, Limits and Places aforeſaid; and to and with all other Nations inhabiting any the Coaſts adjacent to the ſaid Territories, Limits and Places aforeſaid, which are not already poſſeſſed as aforeſaid, or whereof the ſole Liberty or Privilege of Trade and Traffick is not granted to any other of Our Subjects.

And of Our farther royal Favour, and of Our more eſpecial Grace, certain Knowledge, and mere Motion, have granted, and by theſe Preſents for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, do grant to the ſaid Governor and Company, and to their Succeſſors, that *neither the ſaid Territories, Limits and Places*, hereby granted as aforeſaid, nor any Part thereof, nor the Iſlands, Havens, Ports, Cities, Towns and Places, thereof, or therein contained, ſhall be viſited, frequented or haunted, by any of the Subjects of Us, Our Heirs or Succeſſors, contrary to the true Meaning of theſe Preſents, and by Virtue of Our Prerogatives Royal, which We will not have in that Behalf argued or brought into Queſtion; We ſtreightly charge, command and prohibit, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, all the Subjects of Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, of what Degree or Quality ſoever they be, that none of them directly do viſit, haunt, frequent or trade, traffick or adventure, by way of Merchandize, into, or from any the ſaid Territories, Limits or Places, hereby granted, or any, or either of them, other than the ſaid Governor and Company, and ſuch particular Perſons as now be, or hereafter ſhall be, of that Company, their Agents, Factors and Aſſigns, unleſs it be by the Licence and Agreement of the ſaid Governor and Company in Writing firſt had and obtained, under their common Seal, to be granted, upon Pain that every ſuch Perſon or Perſons that ſhall trade and traffick into or from any of the Countries, Territories or Limits aforeſaid, other than the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, *ſhall incur our Indignation, and* the Forfeiture, and the Loſs of the ſaid Goods, Merchandizes, and other Things whatſoever, which ſo ſhall be brought into this Realm of *England*, or any the Dominions of the ſame, contrary to our ſaid Prohibition, or the Purport or true Meaning of theſe Preſents, or which the ſaid Governor and Company ſhall find, take and ſeize, in other Places out of our Dominions, where the ſaid Company, their Agents, Factors or Aſſigns, ſhall trade, traffick or inhabit, by Virtue of theſe Our Letters Patents, as alſo the Ship and Ships, with the Furniture

No Subjects of His Majeſty may trade to the ſaid Places beſides the ſaid Company.

Without their Leave, under their common Seal.

Under Penalty of forfeiting all Goods brought from thence into *England*, and all ſuch as the Company ſhall ſeize in any Parts of their Trading.

Furniture thereof, wherein ſuch Goods, Merchandizes, and other Things, ſhall be brought or found, the one Half of all the ſaid Forfeiture to be to Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, and the other Half thereof by theſe Preſents clearly and wholly for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, give and grant unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors. And farther, all and every the ſaid Offenders, for their ſaid Contempt, to ſuffer ſuch Puniſhment as to Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, ſhall ſeem meet or convenient, and not to be in any wiſe delivered until they, and every of them, ſhall become bound unto the ſaid Governor for the time being in the Sum of One Thouſand Pounds at the leaſt, at no time then after to trade and traffick into any of the ſaid Places, Seas, Bays, Streights, Ports, Havens or Territories, aforeſaid, contrary to Our expreſs Commandment in that Behalf ſet down and publiſhed.

One Half to the King, the other to the Company.

And farther, of Our more eſpecial Grace, We have condeſcended and granted, and by theſe Preſents for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, do grant unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, that We, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, will not grant Liberty, Licence or Power, to any Perſon or Perſons whatſoever, contrary to the Tenor of theſe our Letters Patents, to trade, traffick or inhabit, unto or upon any of the Territories, Limits or Places, afore ſpecified, contrary to the Meaning of theſe Preſents, without the Conſent of the ſaid Governor and Company, or the moſt part of them.

His Majeſty will not grant Liberty of Trade to any other.

And, of Our more abundant Grace and Favour to the ſaid Governor and Company, We do hereby declare Our Will and Pleaſure to be, That if it ſhall ſo happen, that any of the Perſons free, or to be free of the ſaid Company of Adventurers of *England* trading into *Hudſon's Bay*, who ſhall, before the going forth of any Ship or Ships appointed for a Voyage, or otherwiſe, promiſe or agree, by Writing under his or their Hands, to adventure any Sum or Sums of Money, towards the furniſhing any Proviſion, or Maintenance of any Voyage or Voyages, ſet forth or to be ſet forth, or intended or meant to be ſet forth, by the ſaid Governor and Company, or the more Part of them preſent at any publick Aſſembly, commonly called *The General Court*, ſhall not within the Space of twenty Days next after Warning given to him or them, by the ſaid Governor and Company, or their known Officer or Miniſter, bring in and deliver to the Treaſurer or Treaſurers appointed for the

Any Perſons having ſubſcribed to pay in Money, *&c.* and failing thereof.

May after twenty Days Warning.

the Company, ſuch Sums of Money as ſhall have been expreſſed and ſet down in Writing, by the ſaid Perſon or Perſons, ſubſcribed with the Name of ſaid Adventurer or Adventurers, that then, and at all Times after, it ſhall and may be lawful to and for the ſaid Governor and Company, or the more Part of them preſent, whereof the ſaid Governor or his Deputy to be one, at any of their General Courts or General Aſſemblies, to remove and disfranchiſe him or them, and every ſuch Perſon or Perſons at their Wills and Pleaſures, and he or they ſo removed and disfranchiſed, not to be permitted to trade into the Countries, Territories, or Limits aforeſaid, or any Part thereof, nor to have any Adventure or Stock going or remaining with or among the ſaid Company, without ſpecial Licence of the ſaid Governor and Company, or the more Part of them preſent at any General Court, firſt had and obtained in that Behalf, any Thing before in theſe Preſents to the contrary thereof in any wiſe notwithſtanding.

May be removed and disfranchiſed by the ſaid Company.

And Our Will and Pleaſure is, and hereby we do alſo ordain, That it ſhall and may be lawful, to and for the ſaid Governor and Company, or the greater Part of them, whereof the Governor for the Time being, or his Deputy to be one, to admit into, and be of the ſaid Company, all ſuch Servants or Factors, of or for the ſaid Company, and all ſuch others, as to them, or the moſt Part of them preſent, at any Court held for the ſaid Company, the Governor or his Deputy being one, ſhall be thought fit and agreeable with the Orders and Ordinances made and to be made for the Government of the ſaid Company.

They may admit into the Company their Servants and Factors.

And farther, Our Will and Pleaſure is, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do grant unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and to their Succeſſors, that it ſhall and may be lawful in all Elections, and By-laws to be made by the General Court of the Adventurers of the ſaid Company, that every Perſon ſhall have a Number of Votes according to his Stock, that is to ſay, for every hundred Pounds by him ſubſcribed or brought into the preſent Stock, one Vote, and that any of thoſe that have ſubſcribed leſs than one hundred Pounds, may join their reſpective Sums to make one hundred Pounds, and to have one Vote jointly for the ſame, and not otherwiſe.

In all Elections and By laws every Member to have a Vote for each 100 *l.* he has paid in Adventure.

And further, of Our eſpecial Grace, certain Knowledge, and mere Motion, We do for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, grant to

2 and

and with the ſaid *Governor and Company of Adventurers of England trading into Hudſon's Bay*, that all Lands, Territories, Plantations, Forts, Fortifications, Factories, or Colonies, where the ſaid Companies Factories or Trade are or ſhall be, within any the Ports or Places afore limited, ſhall be immediately and from henceforth, under the Power and Command of the ſaid Governor and Company, their Succeſſors and Aſſigns; ſaving the Faith and Allegiance due and to be performed to Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors as aforeſaid; and that the ſaid Governor and Company, ſhall have Liberty, full Power and Authority, to appoint and eſtabliſh Governors, and all other Officers to govern them, and that the Governor and his Council of the ſeveral and reſpective Places where the ſaid Company ſhall have Plantations, Forts, Factories, Colonies, or Places of Trade within any the Countries, Lands or Territories hereby granted, may have Power to judge all Perſons belonging to the ſaid Governor and Company, or that ſhall live under them, in all Cauſes, whether Civil or Criminal, according to the Laws of this Kingdom, and to execute Juſtice accordingly.

All Lands, &c. aforeſaid, to be under the immediate Government of ſaid Company.

Who may appoint Governors and other Officers the Power they are to have.

And, in Caſe any Crime or Miſdemeanor ſhall be committed in any of the ſaid Company's Plantations, Forts, Factories, or Places of Trade within the Limits aforeſaid, where Judicature cannot be executed for want of a Governor and Council there, then in ſuch Caſe it ſhall and may be lawful for the Chief Factor of that Place, and his Council, to tranſmit the Party, together with the Offence, to ſuch other Plantations, Factory, or Fort, where there ſhall be a Governor and Council, where Juſtice may be executed, or into the Kingdom of *England*, as ſhall be thought moſt convenient, there to inflict ſuch Puniſhment as the Nature of the Offence will deſerve.

And moreover, Our Will and Pleaſure is, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, Our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do give and grant unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, free Liberty and Licenſe, in caſe they conceive it neceſſary to ſend either Ships of War, Men or Ammunition, into any their Plantations, Forts, Factories, or Places of Trade aforeſaid, for the Security and Defence of the ſame, and to chooſe Commanders and Officers over them, and to give them Power and Authority, by Commiſſions under their Common Seal, or otherwiſe, to continue or make

Liberty to ſend Ships of War, Ammunition, &c. for Security of ſuch Trade and Territories.

make Peace or War with any Prince or People whatſoever, that are not Chriſtians, in any Places where the ſaid Company ſhall have any Plantations, Forts or Factories, or adjacent thereunto, as ſhall be moſt for the Advantage and Benefit of ſaid Governor and Company, and of their Trade; and alſo to right and recompenſe themſelves upon the Goods, Eſtate or People of thoſe Parts, by whom the ſaid Governor and Company ſhall ſuſtain any Injury, Loſs or Damage, or upon any other People whatſoever, that ſhall any Way, contrary to the Intent of theſe Preſents, interrupt, wrong or injure them in their ſaid Trade, within the ſaid Places, Territories, or Limits, granted by this Charter. And that it ſhall and may be lawful to and for the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, from time to time, and at all Times henceforth, to erect and build ſuch Caſtles, Fortifications, Forts, Gariſons, Colonies or Plantations, Towns or Villages, in any Parts or Places within the Limits and Bounds granted before in theſe Preſents, unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors from time to time, and at all Times from henceforth, to erect and build ſuch Caſtles, Fortifications, Forts, Gariſons, Colonies, or Plantations, Towns or Villages, in any Parts or Places within the Limits and Bounds granted before in theſe Preſents, unto the ſaid Governor and Company, as they in their Diſcretion ſhall think fit and requiſite, and for the Supply of ſuch as ſhall be needful and convenient, to keep and be in the ſame, to ſend out of this Kingdom, to the ſaid Caſtles, Forts, Fortifications, Gariſons, Colonies, Plantations, Towns or Villages, all Kinds of Cloathing, Proviſion of Victuals, Ammunition, and Implements neceſſary for ſuch Purpoſe, paying the Duties and Cuſtom for the ſame, as alſo to tranſport and carry over ſuch Number of Men being willing thereunto, or not prohibited, as they ſhall think fit, and alſo to govern them in ſuch legal and reaſonable Manner as the ſaid Governor and Company ſhall think beſt, and to inflict Puniſhment for Miſdemeanors, or impoſe ſuch Fines upon them for Breach of their Orders, as in theſe Preſents are formerly expreſſed.

And make Peace or War with any Prince or People not Chriſtians, and right themſelves upon their Gooods and Eſtates, and upon any other People whatſoever, that ſhall interrupt or wrong them in the ſaid Trade; And alſo to erect Forts and Gariſon Towns, &c.

And to ſend thither all Kinds of Proviſion, and ſo many Men, being willing, as they ſhall think fit.

And farther, Our Will and Pleaſure is, and by theſe Preſents, for Us, our Heirs and Succeſſors, We do grant unto the ſaid Governor and Company, and their Succeſſors, full Power and lawful Authority to ſeize upon the Perſons of all ſuch *Engliſh*,

 or

Liberty to ſeize all Engliſh who ſhall (without Licence) trade or inhabit in ſaid Parts. The Manner of dealing with their own Servants, in thoſe Parts, offending.

or any other Subjects, which ſhall ſail into *Hudſon's Bay*, or inhabit in any of the Countries, Iſlands or Territories hereby granted to the ſaid Governor and Company, without their Leave and Licence in that Behalf firſt had and obtained, or that ſhall contemn or diſobey their Orders, and ſend them to *England*; and that all and every Perſon or Perſons, being our Subjects, any ways employed by the ſaid Governor and Company, within any the Parts, Places, or Limits aforeſaid, ſhall be liable unto and ſuffer ſuch Puniſhments for any Offences by them committed in the Parts aforeſaid, as the Preſident and Council for the ſaid Governor and Company there ſhall think fit, and the Merit of the Offence ſhall require, as aforeſaid; and in caſe any Perſon or Perſons being convicted and ſentenced by the Preſident and Council of the ſaid Governor and Company, in the Countries, Lands, or Limits aforeſaid, their Factors or Agents there, for any Offence by them done, ſhall appeal from the ſame; and then and in ſuch Caſe, it ſhall and may be lawful to and for the ſaid Preſident and Council, Factors or Agents, to ſeize upon him or them, and to carry him or them home Priſoners into *England*, to the ſaid Governor and Company, there to receive ſuch condign Puniſhment as his Cauſe ſhall require, and the Law of this Nation allow of; and for the better Diſcovery of Abuſes and Injuries to be done unto the ſaid Governor and Company, or their Succeſſors, by any Servant, by them to be employed in the ſaid Voyages and Plantations, it ſhall and may be lawful to and for the ſaid Governor and Company, and their reſpective Preſidents, Chief Agent or Governor in the Parts aforeſaid, to examine upon Oath all Factors, Maſters, Purſers, Supercargoes, Commanders of Caſtles, Forts, Fortifications, Plantations or Colonies, or other Perſons, touching or concerning any Matter or Thing, in which by Law or Uſage an Oath may be adminiſtred, ſo as the ſaid Oath, and the Matter therein contained, be not repugnant, but agreeable to the Laws of this Realm.

The Company may impower any Agent of theirs in thoſe Parts, to examine Witneſſes upon Oath; the ſame not being repugnant to the Laws of this Realm.

All Admirals, and other his Majeſty's Officers and Subjects to be aiding and aſſiſting.

And, We do hereby ſtreightly charge and command all and ſingular, our Admirals, Vice-Admirals, Juſtices, Mayors, Sheriffs, Conſtables, Bailiffs, and all and ſingular other our Officers, Miniſters, Liege Men and Subjects whatſoever, to be aiding, favouring, helping and aſſiſting to the ſaid Governor and Company, and to their Suc-

Succeſſors, and to their Deputies, Officers, Factors, Servants, Aſſignees and Miniſters, and every of them, in executing and enjoying the Premiſſes, as well on Land as at Sea, from time to time, when any of you ſhall thereunto be required; any Statute, Act, Ordinance, Proviſo, Proclamation, or Reſtraint heretofore made, ſet forth, ordained, or provided, or any other Matter, Cauſe or Thing whatſoever to the contrary in any wiſe notwithſtanding. IN WITNESS whereof, we have cauſed theſe our Letters to be made Patents; Witneſs Ourſelf at *Weſtminſter*, the ſecond Day of *May*, in the two and twentieth Year of Our Reign.

By Writ of Privy Seal,

Sign'd,

PIGOTT.

An Abſtract of Captain *Middleton*'s Journal ſent from the *Orkneys*.

Honourable Sir,

SINCE my laſt, which I ſent from *Churchill*, together with a Journal, by one of the *Hudſon's Bay* Ships, I have proceeded on the Diſcovery, and ſhall here recapitulate only what is mentioned more largely in the Journal, which I ſhall ſend you by the firſt Opportunity, together with a Draught of the Parts diſcovered.

I ſailed from *Churchill* the firſt Day of *July*, being the firſt Spurt of Wind I could get for ſailing out of the Harbour, and continued ſailing with a fair Wind till the third, when we ſaw an Iſland, the two Extremities bearing N. by E. and E. by N. lying in the Latitude of 63°. 00′. and Longitude from the Meridian of *Churchill* 3°. 40′. Eaſt, which I take to be the ſame *Fox* named *Brook Cobham*. On the fifth Day I ſaw a Head-land on the North Side of the *Welcome*, bearing N. W. by N. diſtant 7 or 8 Leagues, in the Latitude of 63°. 20′. and Longitude from *Churchill* 4°. 00′. Eaſt. I tried the Tides ſeveral times, and found cloſe in with the Land the Tide to run two Miles an Hour, from the N. by E. which I take to be the Flood, and by the Slacks from ſeveral Trials I found a W. by N. Moon made High-water, having a full Moon that Day. On the eighth Day we ſaw the North Side of the *Welcome*, with a great deal of Ice in Shore. I tried the Tide, and found it ſet E. N. E. two Fathom. On the ninth, continuing my Courſe, and ſailing through much Ice, I was at length obliged to grapple to a large Piece. The Tender did the ſame to keep off from the Shore, the Wind blowing us right on upon it. I tried the Tide frequently, and could not diſcover either Flood or Ebb by my current Logg. Here we were firſt jammed up with Ice, being totally ſurrounded

ſurrounded with it for ſeveral Miles, and the Wind ſetting it right upon us, it was all Ice for 10 Leagues to windward of us, and were in great Danger of being forced aſhore; but it happily falling calm, after we had lain in this Condition two or three Days, the Pieces of Ice ſeparated, or made ſmall Openings, we being then within two Miles of the Shore, and with no little Difficulty haul'd the Ships from one Piece to another, till we got amongſt what we call ſailing Ice, that is, where there are ſuch Intervals of Water, as a Ship by ſeveral Turnings and Windings, among theſe floating Rocks, may get forwards towards the intended Courſe. In this Manner we continued till we ſaw a fair Cape or Head-land to the Northward of *Whalebone Point*, in the Latitude of 65°. 10'. North, and 8°. 54'. Eaſt from *Churchill*; this I named after my worthy Friend Cape *Dobbs*. I had very good Soundings between the two Shores of the *Welcome*, having 46, 48, and 49 Fathoms Water. The ſame time that I ſaw Cape *Dobbs* I deſcry'd an Opening bearing N. W. from us, which, according to my Inſtructions, I ſtood in for amongſt the ſailing Ice. It was juſt Flood when we enter'd it, the Tide running very ſtrong, which, by Obſervations afterwards, I found to run 5 or 6 Miles an Hour. I run over ſome Rocks on the North Side of it very luckily, being juſt High-water, and anchored in about 34 Fathom Water; but as ſoon as the Tide of Ebb was made, it ran ſo ſtrong, and ſuch Quantities and Bodies of Ice came down upon us, that we were obliged to ſteer the Ship all the Time, and to keep all Hands upon their Guard with Ice-poles to ſhove off the Ice, notwithſtanding which, it brought our Anchor home, and taking hold again, one of the Arms of it was broke off. The next Day I ſent my Lieutenant in the Boat to ſeek out ſome ſecurer Place for the Ships, it being impoſſible to keep long afloat where we were. Some *Uſkimay* Savages came off to us, but had nothing to trade. I uſed them civilly, made them ſome Preſents, and diſmiſſed them. As ſoon as I got the Ships ſecured, I employed all my Officers and Boats, having myſelf no ſmall Share in the Labour, in trying the Tides, and diſcovering the Nature and Courſe of this Opening, and after repeated Trials for three Weeks ſucceſſively, I found the Flood conſtantly to come from the Eaſtward, and that it was a large River we were got into, but ſo full of Ice, there was no ſtirring the Ships with any Probability of Safety while the Ice was driving up and

down with the ſtrong Tides. Here I lay, not a little impatient to get out, went ſeveral times in my Boat towards the Mouth of the River, and upon a Hill that overlooked Part of the *Welcome*, ſaw that Place full of Ice; ſo that I found there was no Time loſt by our being in Security. However I ſent my Lieutenant and Maſter in the eight oar'd Boat to look out for a Harbour near the Mouth of the River, but they found none, and it was a ſmall Miracle that they got on board again, for they were ſo jamm'd up with Ice, which, driving with the ſtrong Tides, would inevitably have ſtove the Boat to Pieces, and all muſt have periſhed, had it not been for an Opening in a large Piece of Ice, into which they got the Boat, and with it drove out of the River; but when the Tide ſlacked, the Ice opened as uſual, and then they rowed over to the North Shore, ſo got in with the Flood. I ſeveral times ſent the *Indians* on Shore to ſee if they knew any thing of the Land, but they were quite ignorant of it. In this vexatious Condition I continued for three Weeks, reſolving to get out the firſt Opportunity the River was any thing clear of Ice, and make what Diſcoveries I could by meeting the Tide of Flood. This River, which by my frequent Trials of the Lands, Soundings, Tides, *&c.* I was able to take a Draught of, I named the River *Wager* after the right honourable Sir *Charles Wager*, &c.

On the 3d of *Auguſt*, the River for the firſt Time was a little clear of Ice, and accordingly ſailed out of it in Purſuit of our Diſcovery, and on the 5th by Noon got into the Latitude of 66°. 14'. We had then got into a new Streight, much peſter'd with Ice, and on the North Side of which we ſaw a Cape or Head-land bearing North. We had deep Water and very ſtrong Tides within four or five Leagues of it. I nam'd this Head-land *Cape Hope*, as it gave us all great Joy and Hopes of its being the extreme North Part of *America*, ſeeing little or no Land to the Northward of it. We turn'd or work'd round it the ſame Night, and got five or ſix Leagues to the N. by W. before we could perceive any otherwiſe than a fair and wide Opening; but about Noon the 6th Day, having got into the Latitude of 66°. 40'. found we were embay'd, and by two in the Afternoon could not go above three Leagues farther, and having tried the Tides all the Forenoon, every two Hours till 2 o'Clock in the Afternoon, found neither Ebb nor Flood, yet deep Water. From this it was concluded, that

that we had overſhot the Streights on the N. E. Shore from whence the Flood came, and as there was no proceeding above three or four Leagues farther, it was agreed upon by all to return back, and ſearch narrowly for a Streight or Opening where we found the ſtrong Tides. On the 7th, after we were confirm'd the Flood came in on the N. E. Side from the E. by S. I went on Shore in the Boat, and found it flow'd 15 Foot three Days after the Full, and a W. by S. Moon made High Water. I travelled 12 or 15 Miles from Hill to Hill in-land, till I came to a very high Mountain, from whence I ſaw a Streight or Opening the Flood came in at, and the Mountain I ſtood upon being pretty near the Middle of this Streight, I could plainly ſee both Ends of it, the whole being 18 or 20 Leagues long, and 6 or 7 broad, and very high Land on both Sides of it; but it was all froze faſt from Side to Side, and no Appearance of its clearing this Year, and near the 67th Degree of Latitude, and no anchoring the Ships, being very deep Water cloſe to the Shore, and much large Ice driving with the Ebb and Flood, and but little Room if thick Weather ſhould happen, which we continually expect in theſe Parts, it was agreed upon in Council to make the beſt of our Way out of this dangerous narrow Streight, and make Obſervations between the 64th and 62d Degree of Latitude. The frozen Streight I take to run towards that Land which *Bylot* nam'd *Cape Comfort*, and the Bay where *Fox* has nam'd a Place Lord *Weſton*'s *Portland*. It is in the Latitude of 66°. 40'. and Longitude 12°. 19'. Eaſt from *Churchill*.

Purſuant to the Reſolution we bore away, and tried the Tides on the other Side of the *Welcome*, ſounding and obſerving cloſe in Shore, but met with very little Encouragement. On the 11th of *Auguſt* I once more ſaw the Iſland of *Brook Cobham*, and continued trying the Tide, ſtill finding the Flood came from the Eaſtward, and by coaſting along the *Welcome*, was certain of its being the Main-land, tho' there are ſeveral ſmall Iſlands and deep Bays, and ſaw ſeveral black Whales of the Whale-bone Kind. I work'd off and on by *Brook Cobham*, ſent the two Northern *Indians* on Shore upon the Iſland, who, at their Return, gave me to underſtand it was not far from their Country, and deſired I would let them go home, being tir'd of the Sea. I kept them with Aſſurances that I would act according to my Promiſe; and finding

no

no Probability of a Paſſage, in two or three Days after I gave them a ſmall Boat well fitted with Sails and Oars, the Uſe of which they had been taught, and loaded it with Fire-arms, Powder, Shot, Hatchets, and every Thing deſirable to them. They took their Leave of me, and I ſent another Boat for Water, which accompanied them on Shore. The Southern *Indian*, who was Linguiſt for the Northern ones, returned with the Boat, being us'd to the *Engliſh* Cuſtoms at the Factory, and deſirous of ſeeing *England*, being a willing, handy Man, I brought him with me, and the ſame Evening, which was the 15th of *Auguſt*, I bore away for *England*, thinking to have tried the Tides at *Carey's Swan's Neſt*, but could not fetch it. On the 20th ſaw *Manſel's* Iſle. On the 21ſt *Cape Diggs* was in Sight. On the 26th made *Cape Reſolution*, and arrived at this Place the 15th of *September*. Moſt of my Men are ſo very much afflicted with the Scurvy, and otherwiſe ſick and diſtemper'd, that I muſt be obliged to leave Part of them behind me, and only wait to impreſs Hands to carry the Ship ſafe to *London*. For the Particulars, I muſt refer you to my Journal and Draught, this Sheet of Paper not being ſufficient for the particular Accidents. I heartily wiſh you a better State of Health than I have had during the Voyage, and deſire you will conclude me

Cairſton Harbour, Iſles of *Orkney*, *Sept.* 17*th*, 1742.

Your moſt obedient
Humble Servant,
Chriſtopher Middleton.

P. S. The greateſt Height of the Tides from the Latitude of 65°. 00', N. to the fartheſt we went, did not exceed 16 Foot.

Honble Arthur Dobbs, *Eſq*;

STANDARD

STANDARD of TRADE carried on by the *Hudson's Bay* Company at *Albany Fort*, *Moose River*, and the *East Main*, as it stood in the Year 1733, Beaver Skins being the STANDARD.

Note. *That the Standard at* York Fort *and* Churchill *is much higher, the* French *being not so near those Places, and therefore can't interfere with the Company's Trade so much as they do at* Albany *and* Moose River, *where they undersell the Company, and by that Means carry off the most valuable Furs.*

N°. of Articles.	Goods carried to trade with.	Their Value when barter'd with the *Indians*.			
1	Beads *le Milk*	½	Pound	for	1 Beaver
2	Ditto coloured	¾	Ditto	for	1
3	Kettles Brass	1	Ditto	for	1
4	Lead Black	1	Ditto	for	1
5	Gun-Powder	1½	Ditto	for	1
6	Shot	5	Ditto	for	1
7	Sugar	2	Ditto	for	1
8	Tobacco Brazil	1	Ditto	for	1
9	Ditto Leaf	1½	Ditto	for	1
10	Ditto Roll	1½	Ditto	for	1
11	Thread	1	Ditto	for	2
12	Vermillion	1½	Ounce	for	1
13	Brandy	1	Gallon	for	4
14	Broad Cloath	1	Yard	for	2
15	Blankets	1		for	6
16	Bays	1	Yard	for	1

N°. of Articles.	Goods carried to trade with.	Their Value when barter'd with the *Indians*.
17	Duffels	1 Yard for $1\frac{1}{2}$ Beaver
18	Flannel	1 Yard for $1\frac{1}{2}$
19	Gartering	2 Yards for 1
20	Awl Blades	12 for 1
21	Buttons	12 Doz for 1
22	Breeches	1 Pair for 3
23	Combs	2 for 1
24	Egg Boxes	4 for 1
25	Feathers *red*	2 for 1
26	Fish-Hooks	20 for 1
27	Fire Steels	4 for 1
28	Files	1 for 1
29	Flints	20 for 1
30	Guns	1 for 10 11 12
31	Pistols	1 for 4
32	Gun-Worms	1 for 4
33	Gloves *Yarn*	1 for 1
34	Gogles	2 for 1
35	Handkerchiefs	1 for $1\frac{1}{2}$
36	Hats *laced*	1 for 4
37	Hatchets	2 for 1
38	Hawk Bells	8 for 1
39	Ice Chizils	2 for 1
40	Knives	8 for 1
41	Looking-Glasses	2 for 1
42	Mocotagaus	2 for 1

N°. of Articles.	Goods carried to trade with.	Their Value when barter'd with the *Indians*.			
43	Needles	12 { L. 2 S. 2 & Glov. }	for	1	Beaver
44	Net-Lines	2	for	1	
45	Powder-Horns	2	for	1	
46	Plain Rings	6	for	1	
47	Stone Ditto	3	for	1	
48	Runlets	1½	for	1 or 1½	
49	Scrapers	2	for	1	
50	Sword Blades	2	for	1	
51	Spoons	4	for	1	
52	Shirts	1 { white & check'd }	for	1	
53	Shoes	1 Pair	for	1	
54	Stockings	1 Pair	for	1¼	
55	Saſhes *worſted*	2	for	1	
56	Thimbles	6	for	1	
57	Tobacco Boxes	2	for	1	
58	Tongs	2 Pair	for	1	
59	Trunks	1	for	2	
60	Twine	1 Skane	for	1	

Beaver being the chief Commodity received in Trade in these Parts, it is made the Standard to rate all the Furs and other Goods by.

3	Martin Skins	as	1	Beaver
2	Otters		1	or perhaps 2
1	Queequeehatch		1½	
1	Fox		1	unlefs ext. then 2
1	Cat		2	
1	Moofe		2	
2	Dear Skins		1	
1	Wolf		1	
1	Pound Caftorum		1	
10	Pound Feathers		1	
8	Pair Moofe Hoofs		1	
4	Fathom Netting		1	
1	Black Bear		2	
1	Cub		1	
1	Weejack		1	

The Furs and other Commodities received in this Trade in the Year 1733 at *Albany Fort*, *Moose River*, and the *East Main*.

This Account taken out of Captain *Middleton*'s Book in *April* 1741.

8663			whole Parchment Beaver Skins.
1951	in	3902	half ditto.
2292	in		Coat Beaver.
1060	in	535	Catts.
93	in	62	Queequeehatches.
98	in	49	Bears.
9	in	9	Cubbs.
9	in	9	Wolfs.
70	in	66	Foxes.
$1519\frac{2}{3}$	in	4559	Martins.
136	in	272	Otters.
87	in	870	lb. Feathers.
10	in	10	Weejacks.
$15997\frac{2}{3}$			
$10226\frac{83}{120}$			deducted for the Value of the Goods barter'd at Standard.
Beaver Skins $5770\frac{117}{120}$			gain'd on that Year's Trade.

Beaver

Beaver and other Skins ſold at the *Hudſon's Bay* Company's Sale the 20th of *December*, 1740.

	s.	d.	
Parchment Beaver on an Average ſold for	6	2	*per* Pound.
Coat Beaver - - - - -	5	3	
Cub Ditto - - - - -	6	2	
Martins - - - -	7	10	each.
Otters - - - -	6	0	
Fiſhers - - -	8	6	
Bears - - -	16	0	
Cats - - -	23	0	
Foxes as in Goodneſs from 6 *s.* 2 *d.* to	10	8	
Wolfs on an Average - - -	15	0	
Wolverins - - -	8	0	
Black Bears - - -	17	6	
Woodſhocks - - -	8	2	
Elks - - - -	7	0	
Deer - - - -	2	2	
Bed Feathers - - -	1	1	*per* Pound.
Caſtorum			
Whalefins			

A Com-

A Computation of the Quantity of Skins ſold at the *Hudſon's Bay Company*'s Sale in *December* 1740.

		Lots.	*Quantity in a Lot.* *Skins.*	
5460	Coat Beaver (in Time)	21	260	ſold at 5 *s.* 3 *d. per* Pound.
12320	Parchment ditto (in Time	44	280	- - - 6 *s.* 2 *d.* ditto.
3690	Cubbs - - -	9	410	- - - 6 *s.* 2 *d.* ditto.
3640	Damd and Stage Parcht Beaver	13	280	about 5 *s.* 2 *d.* ditto.
1760	Damag'd Cub Beaver -	4	440	- - 4 *s.* 9 *d.* ditto.
16300	Martins - - -	55	300	- - - 7 *s.* 10 *d.* each Skin.
2360	Damag'd and Stage Martin	8	320	- - 4 *s.* ditto.
560	Otters - - -	3		- - 6 *s.* 3 *d.* ditto.
50	Ditto in Coats - -	-	-	- - 3 *s.* 2 *d.* ditto.
730	Cats - -	7		- - 23 *s.* ditto.
300	Foxes - -	6		- - - 8 *s.* 4 *d.* ditto.
210	Ditto - - -	-		- - - 5 *s.* 8 *d.* ditto.
630	Wolverins - -	6		- - - 8 *s.* ditto.
220	Stage ditto - -	-		- - - 3 *s.* 8 *d.* ditto.
330	Black Bears - -	5		- - - - 17 *s.* 6 *d.* ditto.
720	Wolves (in Time) - -	8		- - - 15 *s.* ditto.
40	Woodſhocks - -	-		- - - 8 *s.* 2 *d.* ditto.
250	Deer - -	2		- - - 2 *s.* 2 *d.* ditto.
30	Elks -	-		- - 7 *s.* ditto.
49600	Skins.			
2360	Pounds Bed Feathers.			
160	Caſtorum.			
610	Whale Fins.			
120	Gallons Whale Oil.			

N. B. Compute one Skin with another on an Average, which will be near the Truth, conſidering the Beaver which is ſold by the Pound, and weighs $1\frac{3}{4}$ to 2 Pound each Skin, and it will make the Amount of this Sale to be 24800 *l.* which is only for one Sale, the Company having two every Year, three Fifths of the Beavers being reſerved for the ſecond Sale, but no other Skins.

An

An Account of the *Hudſon's Bay* Company's Sale, commenced 17th *November* 1743.

	l.	*s.*
5980 Coat Beaver in 23 Lots, 260 Skins each, weighing upon an Average 450 lb. *per* Lot, and ſelling at 4 *s.* 8 *d.* 10350 lb.	2415	00
780 damag'd and Stage ditto in 3 Lots 260 Skins, Weight 1350, at 4 *s.*	270	00
9520 Parchment Beaver in 34 Lots, 280 Skins, each Weight 1½ *per* Skin, is 14280 lb.	4165	00
4070 Cub Beaver in 11 Lots 370 Skins each Weight 10 Oz. *per* Skin, is 2543 6 *s.*	762	18
4760 damag'd and Stage Parchment in 17 Lots, 280 Skins each, Weight 172 *per* Skin, is 7140 5 *s.* 7 *d.*	1918	17
1640 damag'd and Stage Cub in 4 Lots, 410 Skins each, Weight 10 Oz. *per* Skin, is 1024 4 *s.* 10 *d.*	248	9

	Skins.		*Lots.*	*each.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	*l.*	*s.*
12370	5670	Martins in	21	270	7	9	2197	2	6	4242	7
	1500	ditto	6	250	5	1	381	5			
	3640	ditto	14	260	6	9	1228	10			
	1560	ditto	6	260	5	7	435	10			
	2360	damag'd & Stage ditto			3	9	-	-		442	10
	590	Otters		-	14		-	-		413	
	850	Cats		-	18		-	-		765	
	260	ditto dam. & Stage			4		-	-		52	
	320	Foxes		-	12	6	-	-		200	
	600	Wolverins		-	6	10	-	-		205	
	170	ditto damag'd			3	3	-	-		27	12
	320	Black Bears		-	23		-	-		368	
	1580	Wolves		-	20		-	-		1580	

2 270 dit

to

		s.	d.	l.	s.
270	ditto damaged and Stags	9	2	123	15
40	Woodſhock Skins	4	2	22	6
10	Mink Skins	3		1	10
5	Raccoon Skins	3	4		16
120	Squirrel Skins		4	2	
130	Elk				
440	Deer				
3170	Bed Feathers.				
220	ditto in a Tick.				
140	Caſtorum.				
470	Whale-fins.				
23	Caſks Whale Oil and Blubber.				
8	lb. Weſaguipaka.				

The Company reſerve three Fifths of the whole Quantity of Beaver for their *March* Sale, which, after the Rate they ſold at, this Sale amounts to } 14670

The Quantities of Skins and Furs imported by the *French* into the Port of *Rochelle* from *Canada* for the Year 1743.

15000	Old Coat Beaver.
112080	Parchment Beaver.
10623	Large Bears.
5889	Small Bears.
110000	Raccoons.
30325	Martins.
12428	Otters and Fiſhers.
1700	Minks.
1220	Fine Cats.
1267	Wolves.
92	Wolverins.
10280	Grey Foxes and Cats.
451	Red Foxes.
311355	

An Account shewing the Value of the Goods exported to *Hudson's Bay* in the underwritten Years.

From *Christmas*	Year.	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*	Year.	*l.*	*s.*	*d.*
1698 to *Christmas*	1699	943	15	7	1719	1731	11	9
	1700				1720	1897	9	9
	1701	1658	9	8	1721	1788	4	4
	1702	972	16	3	1722	2449	15	11
	1703				1723	2305	2	7
	1704				1724	1497	18	7
	1705	2021	10		1725	2410	17	1
	1706	958	6	2	1726	1599	15	11
	1707				1727	1756	2	
	1708	2025	3	6	1728	2571	13	4
	1709				1729	1941	19	7
	1710	1160	4	3	1730	2315	3	9
	1711	760	2		1731	2876	1	2
	1712	745	14	1	1732	3350	12	3
	1713	893	14	3	1733	3110	9	9
	1714	2349	7	9	1734	3930	19	9
	1715	1402	18	8	1735	2232	17	11
	1716	1259	17	3	1736	1549	16	10
	1717	3191	2	9	1737	4124	18	2
	1718	1847	18	7	1738	3879	17	11

A VOCA-

A VOCABULARY OF ENGLISH *and* ESKIMA WORDS.

A

AN Arm, *Telluck*.
An Arrow, *Caukjuck*.
To be angry, *Nock-que-took*.
Affrighted, *Ukzinck*.
An aged Woman, *Nin-ne-ouck*.

B

Brother, *Nu-ca-auk*.
Beads, *Se-pung-nut*.
A Bear, *Nung-nouk*.
The Belly, *Now-ha-kaw*.
A Bird, *Kuper nu-awk*.
The Breaft, *Suck-ke-uck*.
The Backfide, *No-lo-aw*.
Breeches, *Cock-le-ake*.
To bite, *Ke-e-uke*.
Boots, *Cam-meke*.
Boys, *Su-o-fuke*.
Blood, *Ow-ouk*.
Bawl or cry out, *Ko-qua-took*.
To break Wind, *Ne-luck-took*.
A Bow, *Petick-fic*.
The Eye-brow, *Caup-loot*.

C

To change this, *Ah-kil-le-lu-owk*.
The Chin, *Tap-lou*.
Come here, *Ki-le-out*.
A Child, *Nu-taw-ouk*.
A Captain, *Ot-tan-nuck*.
The Cheek, *Ou-lu-uck-cur*.
A Cap, *Naffock*.
A Canoe, *Ki-rock*.
A Coat, *Kut-te-e*.
Cold, *E-ke-ouk-tuck*.
A Cat, *Am-mi-oke*.
To cut, *Ou-lim-ma-toke*.

D

Deer, *Tuke-tow*.
Day, *Ou-pul-luke*.
Darknefs, *Ou-nu-auk*.
Dog, *Krig-me-nuck*.
Dead, *To-co-rock*.
Devil, *To-nu-ock*.
To dive, *No-cock-toke*.
To dig, *Ok-lu*.

E

The Eyes, *Ebick*.
The Ears, *Se-u-teck*.
An Eagle, *Ouk-pick*.
To eat, *No-e-youk*.
An Egg, *Mannick*.
An Enemy, or one that ftrives to kill, *To-cout-fe-me-mi-roke*.

F

Father, *At-ta-tu-ak.*
Fog, *Tuck-took.*
Fox, *Ter-in-ne-uck.*
To faſten, *Que-luck-tok.*
To fight, *Ou-ne-tok-tuck-lu-eke.*
Fingers, *Crin-me-nu-et.*
The firſt Finger, *Tick-yuck.*
The middle ditto, *Cre-tuck-ſuck.*
The ring ditto, *Me-ke-le-ouk.*
The Fiſh, *Uki-look.*
The little Finger, *Lick-it-cock.*
A Foot, *E-te-ket.*
The Heel of the Foot, *King-meck.*
The Sole of the Foot, *A-lung-a.*
Fire, *E-ko-ma.*
Fleſh, *No-ki.*
To follow, *Me-leting-auk.*
Black Fox, *Tree-ig-ne-uck-ko-no-tock.*

G

A Gun, *Hoo-ke-oot.*
Get you out, *Ow-le-le-out.*
Give it me, *Ki-le-oak.*
A Gooſe, *Nuck-loke.*
Get up, *Muck-ke-le-out.*
To grieve, or be ſorry, *Ning-ne-ok-took.*
Ground, *Nu-nak.*
Guts, *Ela-wa-be-eet.*
Girls, *Hung-nock.*
Good, *Nac-uk-toke.*

H

The Head, *Ne-aw-cock.*
The Hair, *New-rock.*
The Hand, *Alguite.*
The Heart, *Ou-mut.*
To hang, *Cre-me-toke.*
Make haſte, *Twa-ve-o-vit.*
Hatchet, *Willimout.*
A Horn, *Nock-zuck.*
A Houſe or Tent, *Tupe uck.*

I

Iron or Knife, *Sha-veck.*
An impudent Fellow, *No-koo-e-took.*

K

A Knee, *Seat-coke.*
To keep it, *Oo-vong-ah.*

L

Light, *Ou-pe-luck.*
Leg, *Ki-naw-auk.*
To laugh, *Co-ang-took.*
You lie, *Shuk-le-rook.*
Lay it down, *Lal-la-la-oat.*
Little, *Mik-ke-u-awk-rook.*
Lead, *Koo-ſuck-ſe-ock.*

M

A Muſqueteer, *Kic-to-e-al-luck-toke.*
Mouth, *Con-nock.*
Mittings, *Po-illuck.*
The Moon, *Ta:-cock.*
A Man, *Ang-hoot.*
To-morrow, *How-ook-put.*
Much, *Won-na-we-uk-tuck-luit.*
Mother, *An-na-na-tha.*

N

Noſe, *Cring-yauk.*
Neck, *Coon-e-ſoke.*
Navel, *Kaw-le-ſoke.*

Nails,

Nails, *Cook-e-eet.*
Needle, *Mid-coot.*

O

Oil, Fat, or Blubber, *Oak-ſtroke.*

P

Porcupine, *Oo-ke-took.*
A Paw, *Koo-ke-do-an-net.*
A Paddle, *Pow-et-tick.*

Q

Quickeehatch, *Cap-veck.*
Quick, *Twa-ve-o-let.*

R

A Rabbet, *Avign-ark-rook.*
Rain, *Se-lal-luk-toke.*
Ruſt, *Man-nuck-toke.*
Ropes or Lines, *Ouk-ſu-nouk.*

S

I want to go to ſleep, *Wing-le-pah-ſe-me-oma-luk-conga.*
To go to Stool, *An-nos-pah.*
To ſing, *Eming-ne-ok-toke.*
Stars, *Oub-low-yar-tuk-toke.*
Skin, *Am-me-auk.*
Go aſhore, *Nu-nahile-eut.*
Seal, *Nat-choke.*
Sea, *Ut-koo-nok-tuk-lea.*
Sun, *Suck-ki-nuck.*
A Ship, *O-me-auk.*
Salmon, *Halluck.*
Summer, *Owaſa.*

T

Take time, *Twa-vi-ogn-nock.*
Tree, *No-pah-toke.*
Thick, *Epi-o-lu-auk.*
Thin, *Sha-toke.*
The Thumb, *Coop-lu.*

U

To vomit, *Mith-e-ark-took.*

W

A Whale, *Ki-le-lu-ok.*
Whalebone, *Shoot-cock.*
Winter, *Ukink.*
Wolf, *Am-mah-oke.*

Y

Yes, *An-yuck-toke.*
Young Man, *Eno-ſuck-toke.*
Young Woman, *Ne-be-uck-ſeuk.*

SENTENCES.

I Love you, *Na-cuck-tuck.*
Next Summer, *U-pin-nack-pit-Ouſa.*
I love you, you are my Brother, *Nu-ca-a-nacucktuck-u-bunga.*
Don't be afraid, *Uck-zin-uck-uck-zi-biet.*
Come again, *Kay-ma-la-le-vut-it.*
Bring ſome more, *Kay-ſe-ma-la-le-vut-it.*
Change this for Whalebone, *A-ki-li-law-ut-ſoot-cock.*
Throw it away, *Il-le-uck.*
Take hold, *Te-wil-li-ouk.*

A SHORT

VOCABULARY

OF THE

Language ſpoke among the Northern *Indians* inhabiting the North-weſt Part of *Hudſon's Bay*, as it was taken at different times from the Mouths of *Nabiana* and *Zazana*, two *Indians*, who were on board His Majeſty's Ship the *Furnace* in the Year 1742, by *Edward Thompſon*, Surgeon of the ſaid Ship.

A

AFRAID, *T'ſa-at-hoola.*
Arms, *Tenea-ick-the-ou.*
An Arrow, *Say-yo-ſay-hoo.*
Arſe, *Tene-clangh.*
Aſhes, *Encali-hooza.*

B

Back, *Tene-loſſe.*
A Beaver Coat, *Charrough.*
A Bed, *Et's-ſal-thec-nec.*
Belly, *Tenabut.*
A Belt, *Ith-thou.*
Belly-ach, *Ei-yah.*
Buckles, *A'ca-li-ca-la-coon.*
Breaſt, *Tene cau jau.*
Breeches, *Clo-hee.*
A Button, *Boro deli.*
A Shirt Button, *Petabatha i.*
A Blanket, *Elclunee.*
A Book, *Edicliſh,*
A Bottle, *Cotiaut-helle.*
To blow with the Mouth, *Connelugh.*
Ball or large Shot, *Aſſinnee.*
A Boat or Canoe, *Chaluzee.*
To blow the Noſe, *Te eetche.*
Broth, *Son ſon chize.*
Blood, *Dell.*
A Boy, *Enoi-o-zou.*
Blue Cloth, *Ethcloon delzinne.*
A Bruſh, *Petacanatachildi.*
Brandy, *Cla-hoo-ze*, or *Co-at hoi.*
A Bow, *Atheike.*
Black, *Del-ſec-nan.*

Cheek,

C

Cheek, *Tene clotten.*
Chin, *Tene ottan.*
A Coat, *Scoracai.*
Come hither, *Oudezza.*
A Cap or Hat, *I'sat il cozee.*
Copper, *Cha cha nal cozee.*
A Copper Mine, *Chachanalco-zee-hau.*
A Canoe or Boat, *Chaluzee.*
Cold, *Adzak.*
A Comb, *Thec-it-ſec.*
A Crow, *Ta-at-ſau.*
A Chip, *No-coth-thee.*
A Cat *Eng. Che-yah-zoo.*
Wild, *Ha-e-dah.*
To cry, *Tsa-at-ſau.*
To cough, *Zetcoth.*
A Captain, *Belahugina.*
A Can, *Helle.*
Hoops ditto, *a High.*
Lid ditto, *Helle-dau-cau-ne-honne.*
Bottom ditto, *Helle-claw.*
To call, *Clay.*
To carry, *Honne-hough.*
To cut, *Su-ſu-la.*
What do you call this, *Nick-claw-diddee.*

D

A Deer, *All-thun.*
Deers Fat, *Al-thun Chizza.*
A Door, *The-o-balle.*
A Door Lock, *The-o-balle-Clule.*
A Drum, *Tat-tel-chee.*
A Dog, *A-nel-woſh.*
A Duck, *E-hoo-cah.*
Dead, *Zo-he-la.*
Deep, *Shoo-can.*
To dance, *Hela.*

E

Ears, *Tene'tſaw.*
To eat, *Che-chellee.*
Eyes, *Tene-nan.*
An Engliſhman, *Be la hoo li.*
An Eſkimaux, *At-hee-na.*
An Ermin, *Del-coi-a-yen.*

F

Fat or Greaſe, *Chizza.*
The Fore-head, *Tene-ſe-an-hau.*
Fingers, *Te-ne-la-clathec.*
Feet, *Tene-crah.*
A File, *Oh-coll.*
Fire, *O-del-chat.*
Feathers, *Et-the-thau.*
Fire or Exploſion of a Gun, *Cun.*
Fat in general, *H'er-ha.*
To Fart, *Say-et-ſun.*
To fight, *Hel-choo-it-hel.*
A Fiſh, *Cloo-he-za.*
A Fiſh-hook, *Gee-eth.*
A Fiſhing Line, *Eda-cluth.*
Afar off, *Watho.*

G

Garters, *Co-nelli-co-thee.*
Get you gone, *Onni-ou-onna.*
Give it me, *Et-in-Clau-et-hen-ſoo.*
A Gimblet, *Chan-et-thee.*
A Gooſe, *Hah.*
To greaſe the Skin, *Shu-na-elt-ſhun.*

Gloves,

Gloves or Mittens, *E-la-gish.*
A Gun, *Il-ker-thee.*

The Parts belonging to a Gun.
A Ram-Rod, *Ilke-co-cotha.*
A Gun Lock, *Ilke the Solla.*
A Gun Barrel, *Ilke the Soola.*
A Gun Stock, *Ilke the Alcaugh.*
The Hammer, *Ilke the Electha.*
Feather Spring, *Tha-o-de.*
Fore Plate, *Tho-la-do.*
Black Plate, *Ilke the Thaunec.*
A Screw Nail, *Doo-del-do-thee.*
A Flint, *Cla-el-col.*
A Cock, *Ilke the Na-a-tanan.*
A Plate, *Hoo-elth-once.*
The Muzle, *Ke the-dy.*
The Guard, *Tau-nau-ne-aulee.*
The Britch, *Ilke the Ee-cau-na.*
Britch Plate, *Sons-so-nit-than.*
Cap on the Rammer, *Ilke the Nan-da-onne.*
Pipes, *Cau-cau-oth-idde-onne.*
Worm for a Gun, *Cau-oth-deth.*

H

The Head, *Te-net-thee.*
The Fore-head, *Tenet-se-an-haw.*
The Hair of the Head, *Tenet-thea-cau.*
The Hands, *Te-ne-law.*
Nail of the Hand, *Ten-ee co-nee.*
Handkerchief, *Coth e-coth ee.*
A Hatchet, *Tha elth.*
A hungry, *Pa-bath-hit.*
Hold, *Attough.*
A Hat, *Chaw-cauk-hollee,* or *Chaw-ell-collee.*
To hickup, *Shuzz.*
The Head-ach, *Ei-yawh.*

I

I, or myſelf, *She.*
Ink, *Pe-ti da-cliſſe.*
Ice, *Claw.*
An Iſland, *Ca-ow-dez.*

K

A Key, *Sa-challee.*
To kill or murder, *Iſ-keth.*
To kill or ſhoot Game, *Att-hel-coth.*
The Knee, *Tene-cha-cut.*
A Knife, *Pace.*

L

A Lake, *Ic-too-rough.*
To laugh, *Na-chen-claw.*
A Launce, *At-hei-coo.*
Leather, *Helcoll.*
The Legs, *Tene cha-thee.*
The Lips, *Tene-atough.*
A Looking-glaſs, *Et-ſinee-e-au.*
A Louſe, *E-yah.*
To lick, *To-ro-bah.*
To looſe, or loſt, *Hoo-la.*
A Liar, *Att-thun-thuee.*

M

The Moon, *Ec-clee-ſaw.*
The Mouth, *Tene-aw-vauh.*

N

A Nail, *Hoot-ſal.*
Nail of the Hand, *Tenee-conee.*
A Needle, *Tha loon-can-helle.*
The Neck, *Tene caſſan.*

The

The Nose, *Tene-chee.*
Nostrils, *Tha-nee-ah.*
Nothing, *See-hoo-la.*

O

An Otter, *Nabbee.*

P

Paint, *T'-shee.*
Palm of the Hand, *Thæ-a-&o-hoi.*
Paper, *Eddiclish-tha.*
A Pen, *A-a-ai-ca-na.*
A Picture, *Teneyoi-ac-Eddicli-toer.*
A Pistol, *Ilke the oo-la.*
To piss, *Eth-cluzz.*
A Tobacco Pipe, *Chel-to-hu-gi-na.*
A Pillow, *Thee-all.*
A Pocket, *El-konnah.*
Gun-Powder, *Elcona.*
A Shot Pouch, *Ick-ke-thee thee.*
A Plover, *Ah-collee.*
A Powder-Horn, *Agrada.*
Man's Privaties, *Tene-yo-tha.*

Q

A Bed Quilt, *Hell.*

R

A Rabbit, *Cau-choi-a-zou.*
A Ruler for Books, *Ediclish-ca-na.*
A River, *See-bee-la.*
Red Cloth, *Ec-cloon-del-cozee.*

S

Salt, *Teeth-thy.*
Sand, *Ho-deh.*
The Sea, *Ic-too-oz-unne.*
To scratch, *Eis-eit-sal.*
A Shirt, *Ehee.*
A Pair of Scissars, *Tha-o-bess.*
To shoot, *Isketh.*
A Ship, *Cha-co.*
A Shot-Pouch, or little Bag, *Ilk-ke-the-tha.*
Shoes, *Kin nee chee.*
Smoak, *Ka-na-clude.*
To smack with the Lips, *Ho-dat-thoi.*
To shoot a Deer, &c. *Cha-elcol.*
To shoot or kill, *At-hellcoth.*
A Sore, *Tene-caw.*
Stockings, *Thigh.*
Shirt Button, *Petabathacana-clude.*
Sleep, *Itsal-thee-nee.*
To smoak Tobacco, *Che-chel-loot.*
Small Shot, *Elgish-hee.*
A Spoon, *Cloos.*
To shoot, or fire a Gun, *Isketh-all-o.*
Snow, *Yath.*
The Sun, *Saw.*
To sneeze, *Ya-ice.*
To S----t, *Say-et-suna.*
To spit, *Hee-sa.*
Summer, *Attoughoana.*

T

A Table, *Bed-hel-kenau.*
Teeth, *Tene-hough.*
Ten, *A-noth-noo.*
Thirty, *Cuth-a-na-na.*
Three, *At-hoi.*
Twenty, *Cu-na-noth-noo.*
Two, *Chel-la-telle.*
Tenting, or Covering, *Ne-o-balle.*
A Tinder-Box, *Cla-el-thodde.*
Tinder, *Cla-elth.*
The Thighs, *Tene-wough'l.*
I thank you, *Gon-na-zoo.*
Thread, *Pe-ta-nel-coz.*
This, *Diddee.*
Thou, or you, *Nin.*
Thirſty, *Too-hoo-lee.*
The Tongue, *Tene-thoon.*
Touchwood, *Ke-nelt-thee.*
Tobacco, *Chel-to-hee.*
A Tobacco Pipe, *Chel-to-hugina.*
A Tent, *Ya-ho-thy.*

V

To vomit, *Cla-a-coi.*

W

Water, *Ic-too.*
A Watch, *San ya-zoo.*
A Walkin-ſtick or Cane, *'Tthelth.*
A Whet-ſtone, *Pe-ſo-coll.*
White Cloth, *Ethcloon-dellcoz.*
Where, *Ei-ya-guze.*
What, *Onna.*
A Whaway, *Hoo-cah.*
A Periwig, *'Tſah.*
Winter, *Adz-a-halla.*
Wind, *Elk-ker.*
A Window, *Ey-ah.*
To waſh, *Shunnaeltſhun.*
A Woman, *Tene-law.*
A Worm for a Gun, *Caw-oth-deth.*

Y

You, or thou, *Nin.*

The *Northern Indians* Way of Counting.

ONe, *Zodeneah.*
Two, *Chellatelle.*
Three, *Athoi.*
Four, *Tenetthee.*
Five, *Sha-ſha-loi.*
Six, *El-cak-hoi.*
Seven, *Sa-ſhant-hoi.*
Eight, *Elcadre.*
Nine, *Eccloi-a-hant-hoi.*
Ten, *O-noth-noo.*
Eleven, *Ecoltre.*
Twenty, *Cu-na-noth-noo.*
Thirty, *Cuth-a-na-na.*

The

The PARTS belonging to a MAN.

THe Head, *Tenet-thee.*
Fore-head, *Tenet-ſean-haw.*
Hair, *Tenet-thea-caw.*
Ears, *Tenet-ſaw.*
Eye, *Tenne-naw.*
Noſe, *Tene-chee.*
Cheek, *Tene-clotten.*
Chin, *Tene-ottaw.*
Mouth, *Tene-aw-vaub.*
Lips, *Tene-a-tough.*
Teeth, *Tene-hough.*
Tongue, *Tenet-thoon.*
Neck, *Tene-caſſau.*
Breaſt, *Tene-caw-jaw.*
Back, *Tene-toſſee.*
Belly, *Tene-buk.*
Man's Privaties, *Tene-yo-tha.*
Arm, *Tene-ick-the-ow.*
Lower Part of the Arm, *Tene-ick-the-na.*
Hands, *Tene-law.*
Fingers, *Tene-la-Clather.*
Nail of the Hand, *Ten-ee-conner.*
Thighs, *Tene-waughl.*
Knee, *Tene-cha-cut.*
Leggs, *Tene-cha-thee.*
Feet, *Tene-crah.*
Arſe, *Tene-clough.*

F I N I S.

ERRATA.

Page 10, Line 24, for *contiguous* read *continuous.* p. 20, l. 4, for *Hoards* read *Herds.* p. 23, l. 35, for *or* read *de.* p. 30, l. 2, for *Meat* read *Meal.* p. 34, l. 7, for *Beaver* read *Beeves.* p. 48, l. 24, after *for* read *as.* p. 52, l. 36, for *maſk'd* read *maſh'd.* p. 61, l. 13, for *Camanitigayan* read *Camaniſtigayan.* p. 64, l. 11, for *Gamaxaſki* read *Gamaraſki.* p. 96, l. 17, for *Wilſon* read *Smith.* p. 98, l. 9, for *ſhe wnit* read *ſhewn it.* p. 120, l. 35, after *even* read *the.* p. 139, l. 35, for *Yedſo* read *Yedo.* p. 141, l. 18, for *Albicave* read *Albicores.*